

Community Profiles for Western Cape Marine Fisheries

Report

Completed: September 2021

Finalised: February 2022



Photo Credit: Louise C. Gammage

Catherine D. Ward

Contributors: Louise C. Gammage and Astrid Jarre

South African Research Chair in Marine Ecology and Fisheries

University of Cape Town



Acknowledgements

The authors would like to gratefully acknowledge the funding from the South African Research Chair in Marine Ecology and Fisheries for this report.

The authors would also like to thank the University of Cape Town and its Department of Biological Sciences for their support.

The authors are grateful to the selected Local Municipalities and organisations such as ABALOB for providing clarifications and updates on their work where requested for this report.

Contents

Acronyms.....	5
1. Introduction.....	6
1.1. Background.....	6
1.2. Community Profiles.....	6
1.2.1. Defining a community	7
1.2.2. Coastal communities in South Africa	8
1.3. Study Area	9
1.3.1. Overview of fisheries in South Africa	10
1.3.2. Fisheries in the Western Cape.....	12
1.3.3. Harbours in the Western Cape	17
2. Methods	18
2.1. Approach.....	18
2.2. Data Collection	18
2.3. Data Analysis.....	19
2.3.1. Community profile characteristics	19
2.3.2. Census data	19
2.3.3. Spatial planning characteristics.....	20
3. Community Profiles.....	22
3.1. West Coast District Municipality.....	26
3.1.1. Matzikama Local Municipality.....	27
3.1.2. Cederberg Local Municipality	36
3.1.3. Bergrivier Local Municipality	42
3.1.4. Saldanha Bay Local Municipality.....	49
3.1.5. Swartland Local Municipality.....	69
3.2. Overberg District Municipality.....	71
3.2.1. Theewaterskloof Local Municipality.....	72
3.2.2. Overstrand Local Municipality	73
3.2.3. Cape Agulhas Local Municipality	94
3.2.4. Swellendam Local Municipality	102
3.3. Garden Route District Municipality.....	103
3.3.1. Hessequa Local Municipality.....	103
3.3.2. Mossel Bay Local Municipality.....	112
3.3.3. George Local Municipality	118
3.3.4. Knysna Local Municipality.....	121
3.3.5. Bitou Local Municipality	128
4. Highlighted Gaps and Recommendations.....	136
4.1. Overview.....	136
4.2. Challenges.....	137

4.2.1. Covid impacts	137
4.2.2. Data availability	137
4.2.3. Community grouping.....	138
4.2.4. Small-scale fishing policy	138
4.3. Recommendations.....	139
4.3.1. Ground truthing profiles.....	139
4.3.2. Expanding profile selection	139
4.3.3. Fishing profiles for the Cape Town metropolitan area	140
4.3.4. Unpacking fishing dependency at community level	140
4.3.5. Transformation in fisheries and alternative livelihoods.....	140
5. Concluding Remarks.....	141
References.....	142
Annex 1: Additional Community Profiles	148

Acronyms

AIDS	Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome
BCLME	Benguela current large marine ecosystem
CSIR	Council of Scientific and Industrial Research
DFFE	Department of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment (South Africa)
DPSIR	Driving forces, pressures, states, impacts and responses
EAF	Ecosystem Approach to Fisheries management
EEZ	Exclusive economic zone
EU	European Union
FASD	Foetal Alcohol Spectrum Disorder
FIP	Small-Scale Fisheries Improvement Project
GDP	Gross Domestic Product
GVA	Gross Value Added
HIV	Human immunodeficiency virus
ICES	International Council for the Exploration of the Sea
IGFA	International Game Fish Association
IUU	Illegal, unreported, unregulated
MLRA	Marine Living Resources Act of 1998 (South Africa)
MPA	Marine Protected Area
NOAA	National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (USA)
NSRI	National Sea Rescue Institute
RDP	Reconstruction and Development Program
RFMO	Regional Fisheries Management Organization
SADSAA	South African Deep Sea Angling Association
SALDRU	Southern Africa Labour and Development Research Unit
SES	Social-ecological systems
StatsSA	Statistics South Africa
TAC	Total Allowable Catch
TAE	Total Applied Effort
TB	Tuberculosis
UBPL	Upper-bound poverty line
UCT	University of Cape Town
PUCL	Precautionary Upper Catch Limit
USA	United States of America
WPDSAA	Western Province Deep Sea Angling Association
WWF SA	World Wide Fund for Nature South Africa

1. Introduction

1.1. Background

This report details community profiles (snapshot) development for identified fishing communities in South Africa's Western Cape. This forms part of research to establish a prototype set of social indicators relating to human wellbeing, social vulnerability and resilience in coastal communities of the Western Cape Province. Our work contributes to the H2020 TRIATLAS project that seeks to address gaps in understanding South and Tropical Atlantic marine ecosystems and predict their future evolution, thereby contributing towards sustainable management of these complex systems. Within TRIATLAS, Work Package 7.2 analyses the complex interrelationships between human social drivers and societal impacts of long-term variability and change.

In collaboration with colleagues from the United States of America (USA) and Europe, this research is aligned with the assessment of social vulnerability developed for numerous fishing communities in the USA by the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration's (NOAA) social science branch.¹ The research contributes to the All Atlantic Ocean Research Flagship initiative under the European Union (EU) Horizon 2020 programme and is in line with the International Council for the Exploration of the Sea (ICES) initiative on Sea and Society (ICES, 2019). Overall, this work is done in support of the Belém statement, where collaborative research around the Atlantic aims to deliver knowledge of the current state and future changes of the Atlantic marine ecosystems.

In the Benguela current large marine ecosystem (BCLME), one of the most important anthropogenic pressures is fishing (Jarre et al., 2015). In marine social-ecological systems (SES), drawing on the 'driving forces, pressures, states, impacts and responses' (DPSIR) framework (e.g., Kristensen, 2004), human social drivers of variability and change lead to pressures in this the coupled natural system. Given the importance of fishing pressure within the BCLME, it is therefore important to examine what drives fishing in this marine SES. While the broad drivers of fishing are well understood (i.e., people fish to generate income, enhance food security, for traditional or cultural reasons and/or for leisure), these broad characterisations do not adequately capture nuances in which these activities take place at smaller scales in marine SESs. Notably, the context in which marine activities occur at these finer scales within the BCLME are not uniform and have been shown to vary (e.g., Gammage et al., 2017; Duggan, 2018). A potential lack of understanding at these finer scales can lead to management and policy decisions that do not match regional or local contexts, which can lead to compliance challenges (e.g., Norton, 2014) and thus impede sustainability.

Therefore, it is important to analyse drivers of fishing pressure that considers the nuances and place-based complexities of fine-scale marine SESs in the larger BCLME. To address these gaps, our work forms part of research being carried out in the SARChI ME&F team to build on existing methodology developed by NOAA (e.g., Colburn and Jepson, 2012; Jepson and Colburn, 2013; Colburn et al., 2016) from earlier work by Jacob et al. (2010, 2013) for integrated marine ecosystem assessment. Specifically, our contribution in this report focuses on building community profiles for Western Cape marine fisheries, in line with earlier work carried out by Colburn et al. (2010) for NOAA.

1.2. Community Profiles

Community profiles are used to understand the makeup of people residing in a specific geographical area or a particular community of interest. These profiles include information about the diversity within the community, their history, social and economic characteristics, social networks, and social and infrastructure services provided. These profiles can also focus on a specific aspect, such as fishing activities and related themes, as in the case of this report. This understanding can develop a community

¹ See <https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/national/socioeconomics/social-indicators-coastal-communities>

engagement plan and provide insights on key stakeholders and relationships. For example, such a profile can provide information on the level of interest community members may have in being actively involved in a project and their preferred method of engagement (e.g., Clay and Olson (2007) and Colburn et al. 2010).

When examining finer-scale dynamics within marine SES, community profiles can provide helpful information on communities, firms, and individuals engaged in fishing within their historic, demographic, economic and cultural contexts. For example, NOAA's social science branch developed community profiles for Northeast marine fisheries in the USA (Colburn et al., 2010). These profiles illustrated how fishing communities vary depending on specific fisheries, based on historical practices, local availability of resources, management constraints, and market access. This approach is useful for the South African context. It captures the nuances of marine fisheries at the community level to better understand vulnerability, resilience and well-being in these marine SES. Community profiles can also highlight the implications of mismatches in the management of marine fisheries in South Africa.²

1.2.1. Defining a community

Several definitions for a community have a long and inter-related history in anthropology, sociology, geography, and ecology (Clay and Olsen, 2007). Depending on the definition, a community can be bounded by a shared history, location and/or social, economic and political interests (Colburn et al., 2010). While there is no single definition for a community in social sciences, most common core definitions emphasize social interactions typically in a shared environment. When referring to a more specific group, such as a fishing community, social science definitions include themes such as a visible connection to the industry and infrastructure elements (e.g., boats, gear, fishing-related businesses); connections between on-land and at-sea networks; the role kinship often plays in the labour process; multiple households and family-level ties to fishing; and a sense of cultural connection to fishing through changes from small-boat to large-boat, family to industrial, commercial to recreational fishing and even to fishing-related tourism that involves limited fishing activity (Clay and Olson, 2007).

In South Africa, the term community is a complex concept that can be described from many points of view (e.g., Averweg and Leaning, 2015). This has important implications for governance and policy – particularly in the post-apartheid³ South African context where communities occupy a space in the state's regulatory framework, such as in land restitution and land distribution matters (Averweg and Leaning, 2015). For example, in the Land Claims Court, community in the South African legal context draws heavily on the concept that community refers to a bounded group determined by historical links (Averweg and Leaning, 2018). However, Averweg and Leaning (2018) caution that there are many nuances in understanding what community means in terms of legal processes and popular understanding, where other interpretations of a community could be reduced, diminishing the social lives of those who live in unrecognised communities.

The complexities of defining a fishing community in a South African context are highlighted through the evolution of policy for managing marine fisheries, largely due to historical policy under the apartheid regime favouring industrial fishing sectors, where small-scale and subsistence communities were excluded from policy definitions. This led to the Marine Living Resources Act of 1998 (MLRA), which worked to address the past inequalities. Given the multitude of different kinds of fishers operating within the South African context, the process to define specific types of fishers was designed to protect the rights of people such as subsistence or small-scale commercial fishers and sustainability of the resources (Branch et al., 2002). Initially, subsistence fishers have been defined and distinguished from small-scale commercial fisheries mainly due to the use of different resources and having different

² Other potential uses include potential contributions to Social Impact Assessments (SIAs) as part of Environmental Impact Assessments (EIAs) as per the National Environmental Management Act 107 of 1998.

³ Apartheid (meaning “apartness” in Afrikaans) is the name of the policy that institutionalised racial segregation between the white minority and the non-white majority of South Africa during the 20th century. Legislated apartheid ended in the 1990s, however the social and economic legacy remained deeply entrenched today.

objectives. With the introduction of the small-scale fisheries policy in 2012, these definitions have subsequently been refined as unpacked below.

In terms of the Policy for the Small Scale Fisheries Sector in South Africa (2012), *community* is defined as “... any group of persons or a part of such a group who share common interests and regard themselves as a community.” This is further refined when precisely defining a *small scale fishing community* as “... an established socio-cultural group of persons who are, or historically have been, fishermen and -women, including ancillary workers and their families; have shared aspirations and historical interests or rights in the harvesting, catching or processing of marine living resources; have a history of shared Small Scale fishing activity but, because of forced removals, are not necessarily tied to particular waters or geographic area; and were or still are operating near or in the seashore or coastal waters where they previously enjoyed access to marine living resources, or continue to exercise their rights communally in terms of an agreement, custom or law; and who regard themselves as a community.”

The Marine Resources Amendment (Act No 587) of 2014 has further refined the definition of small-scale fishers and define them as “a member of a small-scale fishing community engaged in fishing to meet food and basic livelihood needs, or directly involved in processing or marketing of fish, who— (a) traditionally operate in near-shore fishing grounds; (b) predominantly employ traditional low technology or passive fishing gear; (c) undertake single day fishing trips; and (d) is engaged in consumption, barter or sale of fish or otherwise involved in commercial activity, all within the small-scale fisheries sector.”⁴ This report uses to the term *small-scale* as inclusive of both subsistence and small-scale commercial fisher definitions, referring to a range of labour-intensive harvesting, processing and distribution technologies that exploit fishery resources on a full-time, part-time or seasonal basis for subsistence use as well as local, domestic and international markets (Sowman, 2011).

1.2.2. Coastal communities in South Africa

Along the South African coastline, many settlements depend on harvesting living marine resources either to consume or sell. Most of these fishing settlements are the typical company towns that were established around the fish processing industry, mainly in the Western Cape Province. These communities remain largely segregated along racial lines, which is particularly evident in terms of settlement patterns (see Section 2.3.3. for more information). This was due to the segregation policies from the apartheid era, making it difficult for these settlements to operate as community entities (Isaacs and Hara, 2015). This persisting spatial inequality has made South Africa one of the most unequal and unevenly developed countries in the world, where many poor (largely consisting of people of colour) communities are left behind and entrenched geographical inequalities create inefficiencies and dampen aggregate growth. This results in wasteful use of land, and imposed costs on the movement of people and goods between areas and barriers to business systems (Turok 2018).

Spatial inequality along previous racial lines persists today, where individuals or racial groups as a unit operate independently from each other. In addition to historic forced removals and segregation policies, urban coastal settlements in South Africa have also experienced an influx of people from former homelands and neighbouring countries and more recent growing coastal retirement areas where wealthier retirees move to larger urban areas or inland. For example, the large-scale, rapid expansion of the fish meal and canning industries along the West Coast in the 1940s brought an influx in labour to coastal towns such as Lamberts Bay, St Helena Bay and Saldanha Bay. Many labourers included coloured and Black Africans who were either forced out of Cape Town under the apartheid’s Group

⁴ This definition is worded to allow any small-scale fisher who currently holds an individual (traditional handline) right to trade that right in for participation in a community right.

Areas Act⁵, or those from Eastern Cape homeland areas⁶ seeking employment opportunities. Most of these labourers ended up in distinct communities tied to specific fish factories that controlled the land they occupied, resulting in lagging development of these informal settlements under the previous regime (Jarre et al., 2013). Therefore, South Africa coastal settlements are not typically characterised by the traditional conceptualisation of homogenous spatial community units characterised by a binding social structure and shared norms. The heterogeneous nature of these communities is characterised by socio-political, economic and geographic differences, power relations within each fishing community, power elite structures and complex policies that determine access (or lack thereof) to commercial resources (Isaacs and Hara, 2008).

Another key issue in defining community around coastal resources is determining the geographical extent of the coast inland, and therefore which communities should be included as coastal communities. While the White Paper on Coastal Development proposed 20 km as the limit for defining the coastal belt, this excluded some communities that live beyond this radius due to forced removals under the apartheid. This becomes a complex issue as these removed communities argue that their fishing rights should be restored based on historical residence in coastal communities (Isaacs and Hara, 2015).

This report uses a place-based definition for fishing communities that relies on the South African Census for “Main Place” as the key determinant for location and information for these communities. This identification process of marine fishing communities in the Western Cape is supported by fisher rights registration lists, which capture a multitude of marine fishing from industrial to small-scale activities, as described in Section 2. We focus on marine and estuarine fisheries (and related marine industries), and do not consider inland or freshwater fisheries.

1.3. Study Area

For this report, we focus on marine fisheries operating off the Western Cape. A province in South Africa, the Western Cape is located on the country's south-western coast, extending north and east from the Cape of Good Hope (see Figure 1). It is the fourth largest of the nine provinces, stretching about 400 kilometres (250 miles) northwards along the Atlantic coast and roughly 500 kilometres (300 miles) eastwards along the South African south coast (Southern Indian Ocean). The Western Cape is the third most populous province in South Africa, with an estimated 7 million inhabitants in 2020 (Western Cape Government, 2021). The province is divided into five district councils, consisting of 24 municipalities and one metropolitan municipality, the City of Cape Town. Approximately two-thirds of the Western Cape's population live in the metropolitan area of Cape Town, the capital of the province. Other major urban areas include George, Stellenbosch, Paarl and Worcester. The Garden Route and the Overberg are popular coastal tourism areas. The coloured population is the most dominant population group⁷ in the province, followed by Black Africans, according to the Community Survey 2016. Afrikaans is spoken by the majority, followed by isiXhosa and English as the other main languages. The services sector is the biggest driver of economic growth and job creation in the Western Cape, where the province also has the lowest unemployment rate (27.3 %) in the country, compared to the official rate of 32.5 % (Western Cape Government, 2021).

⁵ The Group Areas Act (consisting of three acts) was promulgated in 1950 under the apartheid regime in South Africa, where the acts assigned racial groups to different residential and business sections in urban areas to exclude people of colour from living in the most developed areas (which were restricted to white people) (see www.sahistory.org.za).

⁶ The homelands were established by the apartheid regime as areas to which the majority of the Black African population was moved to prevent them from living in the urban areas of South Africa (see www.sahistory.org.za).

⁷ Refer to Section 2.3.2 for full definitions and explanations on South African population group categorisations.

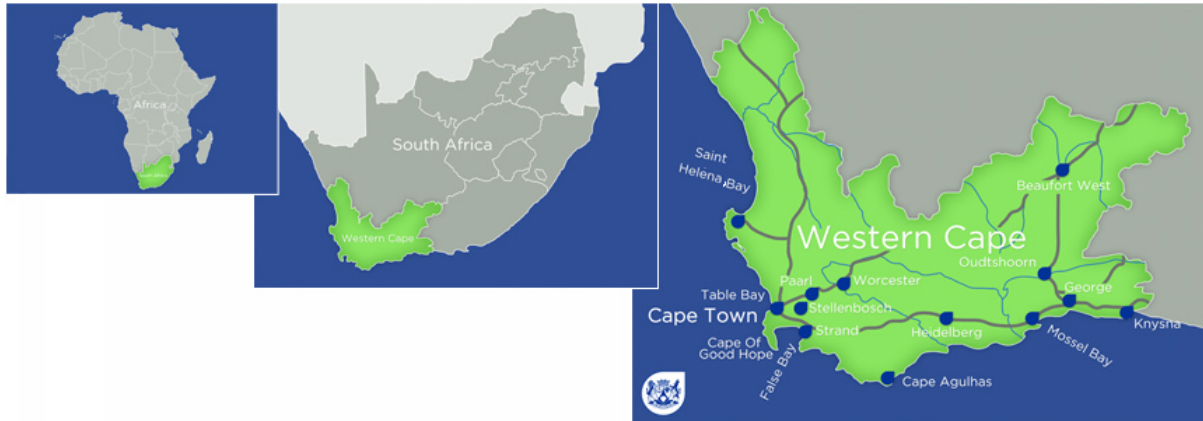


Figure 1: Location of the Western Cape Province with key urban areas in South Africa (Western Cape Government, 2021).

1.3.1. Overview of fisheries in South Africa

The oceans off South Africa hold a prominent position in the global ocean conveyor belt, which forms part of the BCLME. The BCLME is a large marine eastern boundary current system dominated by coastal upwelling that is a very productive region in terms of commercially exploited fisheries (Jarre et al., 2015). The BCLME consists of four alongshore subsystems – the (1) Angolan Subtropical subsystem; the (2) Northern Benguela upwelling off the west coasts of Namibia and southernmost Angola; the (3) Southern Benguela West Coast off South Africa with an upwelling subsystem comprised of the west coast and Western Agulhas Bank; and the (4) Southern Benguela South Coast subsystem which consists of the Central and Eastern Agulhas Bank (Jarre et al., 2015). The Southern Benguela West and South Coast subsystems extend off the Western Cape Province (see Figure 2).



Figure 2: West and South Coast locations within the Southern Benguela in relation to the Western Cape.

In the highly productive region of the Southern Benguela, the pre-colonial exploitation of marine resources has a long history. Historical records show indigenous people along the West and South coasts harvested intertidal resources for at least 50 000 years (Cardoso et al., 2005). However, colonial and industrial fishing impacts were initially slower to take place in the Southern Benguela marine ecosystems, where commercial fishing⁸ of finfish started in South Africa in the late 1700s, spreading

⁸ Fishing methods included netting fish from the shore or handline fishers working from small boats (Currie et al., 2020)

along the coasts as the colonial settlements expanded (Currie et al., 2020). Industrial fishing started from the 1890s when the first steam trawler was registered in Cape Town and subsequently expanded into the 20th century (Currie et al., 2020), where South African fisheries policy favoured industrial fisheries from the twentieth century that left a legacy of marginalisation for coastal fishing communities and over-exploitation of marine ecosystems (Jarre et al., 2013). During the apartheid era, a few large white-owned commercial operations dominated the fishing industry, where limited legal mechanisms were available for marginalised people of colour to gain direct access to marine resources (Cardoso et al., 2005). With the onset of democracy, while structural changes have been put in place to address past inequalities and the heavily exploited marine resource base, South Africa favours a neoclassical economy that continues to advance economic over ecological and social values (Jarre et al., 2018).

Due to anthropogenic pressures such as fishing and environmental change, the marine ecosystems of the Southern Benguela have altered significantly since the onset of industrialised fishing in the 20th century, where the over-exploitation of commercially important species have resulted in stock collapse and ecosystem regime shifts⁹ that drastically altered species composition for the marine system (Howard et al., 2007, Blamey et al., 2012, Curry et al., 2020). For example, overfishing resulted in the abrupt stock collapse of the sardine population on the West Coast in the early 1960s, where the small pelagics industry restructured to target alternative species (such as anchovy) and redeployed its workforce into canning factories. However, an ecosystem regime shift occurred in the late 1990s/early 2000s that resulted in the sudden absence of small pelagics from the West Coast and industry followed the fish as they shifted towards the South Coast, closing many factories on the West Coast that had significant consequences for dependent coastal communities (Jarre et al., 2013). Another notable example is the South African commercial rock-lobster fishery that started in the late 19th century, historically based on the West Coast due to dense lobster populations. In the 1960s, there was a significant decline in commercial rock lobster catch due to over-fishing and environmental changes. Rock lobsters declined further on the West Coast in the 1990s due to the 1990s regime shift, exacerbated by lobster walkouts¹⁰ (Blamey et al., 2012). The West Coast rock lobster resource has subsequently shifted its distribution towards the South Coast, with significant implications for coastal communities on the West Coast traditionally dependent on rock lobster.

Today, commercially exploited fisheries are well established in South Africa and consist of two main components – the wild capture fisheries component that range from highly industrialised, capital-intensive fishing sectors to more accessible fishing sectors including subsistence fisheries; and an aquaculture component that remains less developed. Four general fisheries clusters are found in South Africa, namely (1) an open-water, offshore sector that is capital intensive using specialised technology targeting inaccessible but lucrative stock; (2) closer inshore industrial fisheries with a limited scope of mobility; (3) inshore fisheries that target more accessible resources and thus characterised as small commercial enterprises with limited capital; and (4) shore-based fisheries that exploit intertidal or shallow water resources that are easily accessible and cheap to harvest with minimum gear (Norton, 2014). Diversity within the fishing sectors includes large-scale commercial, small-scale commercial, small-scale, subsistence and recreational fishers. Between the West and South coasts, the types of commercial fishing activities vary. The West Coast, a typical upwelling system, is largely dominated by small pelagics (such as anchovy (*Engraulis encrasicolus*) and sardine (*Sardinops sagax*)), various species of large pelagics (including horse mackerel (*Trachurus capensis*), snoek (*Tyrsites atun*), Atlantic bonito (*Sarda sarda*), yellowtail (*Seriola lalandi*), and various tuna species), hakes (*Merluccius capensis* and *M. paradoxus*), West Coast rock lobster (*Jasus lalandii*) and South Coast rock lobster (*Palinurus gilchristi*) and abalone (*Haliotis midae*). The temperate shelf ecosystem of the South Coast is dominated by these pelagics, hakes, squid (*Loligo reynaudii*) and a greater diversity of linefish. Industrial processing activities of the Western Cape are predominately based on the West Coast. At the

⁹ Ecological regime shifts are large, sudden changes in ecosystems that alter systems to a different state and cannot necessarily be reversed, which is considered undesirable as they negatively impact people's livelihoods (Biggs et al., 2009).

¹⁰ See Elands Bay community profile as an example.

same time, the South Coast is dominated by subsistence and recreational fishing, and industrial processing capacity is smaller than at the West Coast.

The present-day South African fishing industry is highly complex, with great diversity in catching techniques, processing, marketing, capital investment, equipment, and infrastructure. Thus, a fishery can be classified according to target species, capital, gear, infrastructure and location (Norton, 2014). This industry incorporates diverse stakeholders operating under numerous sectoral management plans (including sectoral Scientific and Resource Management Working Groups) and overarching management frameworks. The impact on target fish species is managed primarily through the setting of a Total Allowable Catch (TAC), a Total Applied Effort (TAE), a Precautionary Upper Catch Limit (PUCL) or a combination of these strategies. Furthermore, South Africa is a signatory to the World Summit on Sustainable Development and has committed to implementing an Ecosystem Approach to Fisheries Management (EAF). Policies for the management of marine fisheries are developed under the umbrella of the MLRA. This South African statutory law caters for the conservation of the marine ecosystem and sustainable use of marine living resources in the territorial waters and exclusive economic zone (EEZ) of South Africa. This includes the Policy for the Small Scale Fisheries Sector in South Africa (2012) and the ongoing Fishing Rights Allocation Process¹¹ (FRAP) that have gone through numerous iterations in an effort to address the under-representation of historically disadvantaged individuals or companies. On a national level, the South African fisheries authority has been in a perpetual state of crisis over the last two decades, aggravated during the Zuma presidency¹² and the resulting culture of corruption between senior officials that had left the department unable to perform many tasks such as allocating fishing rights and enforcing regulations.¹³

Currently, the Department of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment (DFFE) is tasked with managing the development and sustainable use of marine and coastal resources, maximising the economic potential of the fisheries sector, and protecting the integrity and quality of South Africa's marine and coastal ecosystems. All fishing activities require licenses, including recreational activities – where permits for recreational fishers are purchased at local post offices, and recreational fishers cannot sell their catches.¹⁴ The enforcement of fisheries regulation is carried out by local contingents of Senior Marine Compliance Inspectors, based at stations in sites of significant fishing activity (Norton and Jarre, 2020). For more complex and more extensive maritime compliance operations, Phakisa Initiative 5¹⁵ is a multi-stakeholder initiative led by DFFE that focuses on mitigating marine poaching activities (including illegal, unreported and unregulated (IUU) fishing), infringements in protected areas, contraventions of maritime safety legislation and (to a limited extent) disrupting narcotics routes (DEFF, 2020a).

1.3.2. Fisheries in the Western Cape

While the overall fisheries sector only plays a small part in the South African economy (i.e., less than one percent of gross domestic product), regional fisheries play a major role in the local economy, where the Western Cape accounts for about 85% of fishing activity¹⁶ in the country and 71% of employment in the fishing industry alone (Western Cape Government, 2015). Active marine fishing sectors in the Western Cape include abalone, hake deep sea and inshore trawl, hake handline and longline, horse

¹¹ Fishing Rights Allocation Process (FRAP) 2005, 2013, 2015, 2020

¹² In 2009, there was a significant shift in the management of South Africa's fishing industry when President Jacob Zuma reshuffled his cabinet and placed the fisheries portfolio under the new Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries (DAFF), shifting the focus on fisheries from conservation back to commercial production (Norton, 2014).

¹³ See <https://www.groundup.org.za/article/fisheries-department-rots-top/>

¹⁴ For example, the recreational fishery for rock lobster is tightly regulated, where lobster can only be removed from the sea during open season and within size (i.e., minimum size of 80 mm) and bag (i.e., maximum of four lobster per day in 2020) limits.

¹⁵ See <http://www.operationphakisa.gov.za>

¹⁶ See <https://www.dailymaverick.co.za/opinionista/2021-01-20-fishing-rights-and-quota-allocation-delays-are-hammering-poor-coastal-communities/>

mackerel, large and small pelagics, netfish, oyster, seaweed, (demersal) shark, squid, traditional linefish, tuna pole, West Coast rock lobster near and offshore, and white mussel (details in Section 2.1).

This province is the centre of industrial fisheries and is the dominant employer in areas such as Saldanha Bay and St Helena Bay. Other major centres where fisheries-related employment and income generation is important includes Cape Town, Gansbaai and Mossel Bay (FAO, 2001). Traditionally, fisheries also play a significant role within the livelihoods of coastal communities, and the Western Cape is no exception.¹⁷ In addition to the main industrial and traditional fisheries, the recreational line fishery contributes significantly to the regional economy both directly and indirectly through the many related industries. For example, the recreational linefishery has the largest number of participants (>450 000) of all fishery sectors in South Africa, making it very valuable economically for the country (DEFF, 2020b). Figure 3 presents the official¹⁸ overview of South Africa's fishing pressure and stock status of key exploited marine species.

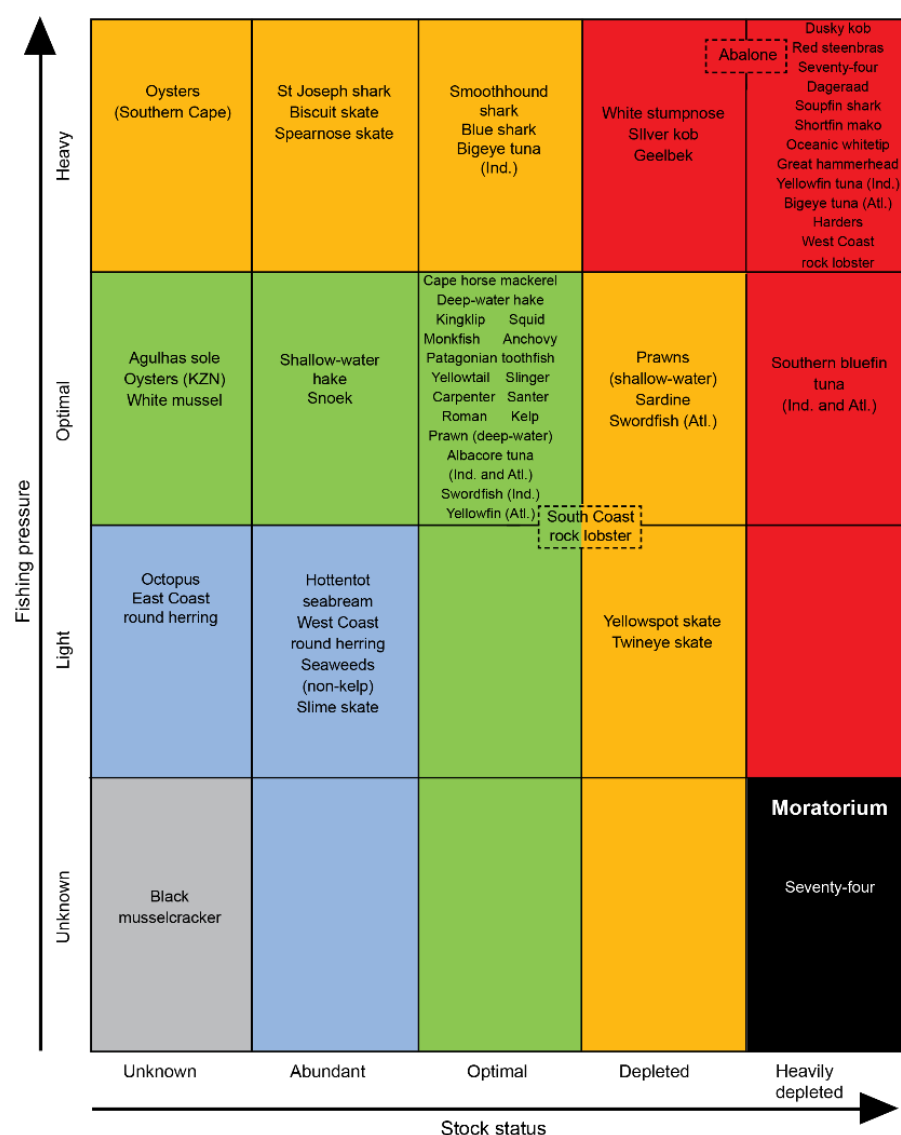


Figure 3: An overview of South Africa's fishing pressure and stock status of key marine species (DEFF, 2020b).

¹⁷ For example, 21 fishing communities participated in the registration and verification process to become small-scale fishing communities with small-scale fishing co-operatives in 2017 along the West Coast alone – see <https://www.worldfishing.net/news101/industry-news/backlash-against-middle-men-in-south-africa>

¹⁸ Other classifications are also available in South Africa – for example, the World Wide Fund for Nature (WWF) established the South African Sustainable Seafood Initiative (SASSI) to provide information on sustainable seafood to all participants in the seafood trade, from wholesalers to restaurateurs through to seafood lovers.

The West Coast of South Africa dominates commercial fish landings in volume, particularly in the Western Cape (FAO, 2001). South Africa's largest commercial fishery (relative to total catch), the pelagic fishery, primarily targets anchovy and sardine, with canneries and reduction plants concentrated on the West Coast, operating between St Helena Bay and Gansbaai. Small pelagic forage fish off the coast of South Africa (including sardine, anchovy, redeye round herring (*Etrumeus whiteheadi*) and juvenile horse mackerel) account for more than 90 % of the total pelagic purse seine catch and make vital ecological, economic, nutritional and employment contributions (DEFF, 2020b). Due to historical stock depletion attributed to fishing pressures taking place off the South African coast, long-term changes in the relative abundance of anchovy and sardine have been observed. Recent assessments show that sardine stocks are depleted, anchovy is considered optimal, and West Coast round herring are considered abundant. The total combined catch of anchovy, sardine and round herring landed by the pelagic fishery has decreased by 45 % between 2016 and 2019, from 395 000 to 219 000 tonnes, largely due to a substantial decrease in the catch of anchovy from 262 000 tonnes in 2016 to 166 000 tonnes in 2019 (DEFF, 2020b).

The demersal sector (deep-water trawl¹⁹) is the next largest fishery targeting shallow-water and deep-water Cape hakes (*Merluccius capensis* and *paradoxus*, respectively). Demersal landings occur mostly in Cape Town and Saldanha Bay. Overall, the hake fishery is one of the most valuable marine fisheries, providing approximately 30 000 jobs and an annual landed value over R5.2 billion in South Africa (DEFF, 2020b). The demersal hake trawl fishery has operated as a modern industrialised fishery since the 1890s, with concurrent changes to demersal habitats (e.g., Currie et al. 2020) similar to those observed in shelf ecosystems in the northern hemisphere. The hake trawl fishery is the only South African fishery certified by the Marine Stewardship Council (MSC),²⁰ providing substantial socio-economic benefits through enabling access to international markets. Recently updated stock assessments showed that the deep-water hake resource is above the biomass level at which maximum sustainable yield is obtained from 2010 onwards, currently considered at optimal status (DEFF, 2020b). Cape horse mackerel (*Trachurus capensis*) are currently caught as incidental bycatch by the hake-directed demersal trawl fleet and as a targeted catch on the South Coast by the midwater trawl fleet (which lands about 70% of horse mackerel trawl catches). Several smaller hake trawlers carrying both hake and horse mackerel Rights opportunistically target horse mackerel with midwater gear in addition to their normal hake fishing operations using demersal trawl gear. The current status of horse mackerel is considered to be optimal (DEFF, 2020b). “Joint product” in the inshore trawl sector, such as kob, continues to be contested between the inshore trawl sector and inshore fisheries such as the traditional handline fishery.

Large pelagic fish resources within South African waters consist of several tuna species that are exploited commercially – common species include albacore (*Thunnus alalunga*), yellowfin (*Thunnus Albacares*), bigeye (*Thunnus obesus*) and southern bluefin (*Thunnus maccoyii*) tunas, and swordfish (*Xiphias gladius*). These species are migratory where their distributions span multiple EEZs and the high seas, where this international management of this resource is regulated through the tuna Regional Fisheries Management Organizations (RFMOs).²¹ The two South African commercial sectors that target tuna (and tuna-like species) are the tuna pole-line (or *baitboat*) and the large pelagic longline fisheries. In addition, the boat-based commercial linefishery opportunistically catch tuna and boat-based recreational anglers carry out game fishing for tuna and sailfishes (DEFF, 2020b). The South African tuna pole fishing sector predominately targets albacore tuna and operates in waters up to 1 000 km off the South and West Coasts. While most tuna stocks are considered heavily depleted, albacore tuna is considered optimal (DEFF, 2020b). The large pelagic longline fishery also consisted of a pelagic shark

¹⁹ Organisations representing the deep-sea trawl fishing industry in South Africa are South African Deep Sea Trawling Industry Association (SADSTIA) and the South East Coast Industrial Fishing Association (SECIFA). The large industrial fishing companies of I&J, the Oceana Group and Sea Harvest are members of SADSTIA.

²⁰ See https://www.sadstia.co.za/assets/uploads/MSC-Public-Certification-Report_12_Feb_21.pdf

²¹ For example, the International Commission for the Conservation of Atlantic Tunas (ICCAT) at <https://www.iccat.int>.

fishery (targeting shortfin mako (*Isurus oxyrinchus*) and blue (*Prionace glauca*) sharks) until 2011, however stricter measures have been introduced and pelagic sharks are now considered bycatch. The demersal shark longline fishery is the only sector that targets (inshore) demersal shark species (such as smooth-hound (*Mustelus mustelus*) and soupfin (*Galeorhinus galeus*) sharks); however, the inshore trawl fishery and the commercial linefishery notably catch sharks as bycatch (DEFF, 2020b). In general, shark species are considered to be over-exploited and depleted.

Other commercial fisheries operating from the Western Cape include the inshore bottom-trawl fishery in Mossel Bay on the South Coast targeting sole (*Austroglossus pectoralis*), hake and “joint product” such as silver kob (*Argyrosomus inodorus*), the Cape Hope squid (*Loligo reynaudii*), the West Coast rock lobster (*Jasus lalandii*) fishery and the deep-water South Coast rock lobster (*Palinurus gilchristi*) fishery. Colloquially referred to as *chokka*, squid is the target of a dedicated commercial jig fishery that operates between the Cape of Good Hope and Port Alfred (in the Eastern Cape province). The squid fishery is South Africa’s third-largest fishery in monetary terms (believed to generate over R480 million in a good year) and employs approximately 3 000 people in the two provinces. The current status of squid is considered to be optimal (DEFF, 2020b). The inshore trawl and hake handline sectors operate only on the South Coast, whereas the deep-sea trawl and longline fleets operate on the West and South coasts. Shallow-water hake stocks are currently considered to be at abundant status (DEFF, 2020b). The true status of Agulhas sole resource stocks, a small but commercially important component of the mixed-species inshore trawl fishery on the South Coast, remains uncertain but is much reduced from its historical size. The West Coast rock lobster fishery is the most important South African rock lobster fishery due to its high market value (more than R500 million per annum), employing over 4 200 people from communities along the West Coast. However, the West Coast rock lobster resource is heavily depleted, with continued concern around the rampant illegal harvesting. In contrast, the South Coast rock lobster resource (the second-largest rock lobster fishery in South Africa and endemic to the south coast) is in an optimal to depleted state.

Smaller commercial fisheries include the dive fishery for Western Cape abalone (*Haliotis midae*) fishery, collection of Cape rock oyster (*Striostrea margaritacea*) and white mussel (*Donax serra*), beach-seine and gillnet fisheries, and the extensive handline fisheries. Once a lucrative commercial fishery (earning up to approximately R100 million annually at the turn of the 20th century), heavy illegal harvesting and adverse changes within their natural habitat resulted in the total closure of the abalone fishery in 2008 (subsequently reopened in 2010).²² The status of the abalone resource continues to decline in response to extremely high levels of illegal harvesting and over-allocation of TACs (DEFF, 2020b). The commercial collection of oysters features prominently along the southern Cape Coast, where this resource’s uncertain status and overexploitation has prioritised research and management incentives. Collection for white mussels features mainly on the West Coast, where commercial harvesting occurs between Doringbaai and the Cape Town metropolitan area. There are several active beach-seine and gillnet fisheries throughout South Africa, with the largest of the fisheries for harders (*Chelon richardsonii*) concentrated on the West Coast. This fishery has a complex management history, particularly within St Helena Bay, Saldanha and Langebaan, and harders are considered depleted in this area due to overfishing, illegal harvesting, and adverse environmental conditions that disrupt breeding cycles (DEFF, 2020b).

The linefishery is a complex sector targeting many species and operates from the major harbours and ports and from beaches, estuaries, and river mouths (FAO, 2001). Target species for South Africa include temperate, reef-associated seabreams such as red roman (*Chrysoblephus laticeps*), hottentot seabream (*Pachymetopon blochii*), santer (*Cheimerius nufar*) and slinger (*Chrysoblephus puniceus*); coastal migrants such as geelbek (*Atractoscion aequidens*), silver kob and dusky kob (*Argyrosomus japonicus*); and nomads such as snoek (*Thyrsites atun*) and yellowtail (*Seriola lalandi*). Stocks of

²² Following the 1990s ecosystem regime shift in the Southern Benguela, the commercially important West Coast rock lobster resource shifted its distribution from the West Coast towards the South Coast. This led to the drastic decline of urchins (the preferred prey of lobsters) on the South Coast, leading to dire consequences for the abalone population that use urchins as shelter (Blamey et al., 2012).

hottentot seabream, snoek, carpenter, santer, slinger, red roman and yellowtail are officially considered to be at abundant/optimal status. Silver kob, geelbeck and white stumpnose (*Rhabdosargus globiceps*) are considered depleted and continue to be over-fished. Seventy-four seabream (*Polysteganus undulosus*), red steenbras (*Petrus rupestris*), dageraad (*Chrysoblephus cristiceps*) and dusky kob are heavily depleted or collapsed resources (DEFF, 2020). While the landings of linefish sectors are low relative to the main industrial fisheries, the fishery's activity and profile are high as it is a low-earning, labour-intensive industry with a vital livelihood dimension. Employing an estimated 27 % of all fishers, this commercial sector provides the lowest average employment income of all South African fisheries (DEFF, 2020b). Recent stock assessments show that reduced fishing effort from the 2000s has allowed partial recovery of some species. However, linefish resources remain at risk of overexploitation and collapse. Numerous sectors are directly or indirectly exploited, including the traditional commercial, recreational and small-scale linefisheries, inshore and offshore trawl fisheries, tuna pole-line fishery, and inshore netfishery and the demersal shark longline fishery. The bycatch of linefish species by the inshore and offshore trawl fisheries remains a high concern (DEFF, 2020b).

Importantly, diverse small-scale fisheries also operate along the South African coast, ranging from the shore-based harvesting of intertidal resources to targeting migratory linefish stocks using motorized vessels. Along the Western Cape coastline, small-scale fishing is predominately labour-intensive and boat-based, conducted close to shore using low technology gear where the duration of a trip is usually less than a day. Individuals can be linked to a range of fishing activities that cut across large- and small-scale sectors. Small-scale fisheries are thus complex where some activities only have certain components recognised by the fisheries authority, while others operate under recreational fisheries regulations or remain informal (Snowdon et al., 2014). Small-scale fishers have mainly been marginalised and excluded from policy, where persisting inequalities are most profound in previously disadvantaged communities who traditionally rely on small-scale fishing activities to sustain their livelihoods. Thus, there is a strong civil society advocacy component that has developed since the 1990s to support the legal recognition of small-scale fishers in South Africa, where prominent community organisations such as Masifundise Development Trust²³ in partnership with Coastal Links South Africa²⁴ have played an important role in advocating for small-scale fisher rights. While strides have been made to address and recognise the rights of small-scale fishers in South Africa, such as the development of the Small-Scale Fisheries Policy, this process is currently contested²⁵ and under review²⁶ in the Western Cape as the allocation and verification process was problematic and unevenly rolled out in affected fishing communities.

Other related marine industries such as seaweed also play an important role in the Western Cape. In the past, beach-cast gracilarioids (agar-producing red seaweeds of the genera *Gracilaria* and *Gracilariopsis*) were collected in Saldanha Bay and St Helena Bay, however, there has been no commercial activity there since the mid-2000s. In the Western Cape, the South African seaweed industry is currently based on collecting beach-cast kelps and harvesting of fresh kelps. Fresh kelp is currently harvested with a market value of over R6 million to provide feed for abalone farms. This resource is considered to be optimally used (DEFF, 2020b).

The Western Cape also leads in aquaculture production of both freshwater and saltwater sectors for South Africa, with more than 39 % of the aquaculture farming enterprises in South Africa based in the province, making it the most significant contributor to national Gross Domestic Product (GDP) in terms of export-based aquaculture production (AgriProbe, 2010). Various marine species such as abalone, silver kob, dusky kob, yellowtail, seaweed, mussel and oyster are currently cultivated in the province. For example, the Western Cape houses 13 of the 18 South African-based abalone farms and Saldanha

²³ See <https://www.masifundise.org>

²⁴ See <http://www.masifundise.org/coastal-links/>

²⁵ See <https://www.dailymaverick.co.za/opinionista/2021-03-23-justice-delayed-is-justice-denied-the-toll-on-western-capes-small-scale-fishing-communities/>

²⁶ See <https://www.timeslive.co.za/news/south-africa/2021-02-20-small-scale-fishing-rights-in-western-cape-set-to-be-scrapped-says-creecy/>

Bay is the only location of mussel farms in South Africa. While aquaculture accounts for less than 0.2% of the national GDP, abalone aquaculture (for example) has been earmarked by the national government as a target sector (Agriprobe, 2021). In addition to off-setting illegal harvesting activities to relieve pressure on wild resources, abalone aquaculture is also viewed to have the potential to uplift specific communities and improve socio-economic conditions (Agriprobe, 2021).

1.3.3. Harbours in the Western Cape

Harbours along the coast play essential roles in supporting near- and offshore fishing, aquaculture, and other maritime economic activities. They also play a key role in creating jobs through tourism by providing marine access for charters and specialist boat trips (whale watching, game and recreational fishing, sightseeing) as well as sailing, power boating, and personal watercraft-related activities.²⁷ No new public harbours have been built in South Africa since the 1950s and the current harbours have deteriorated over time due to the lack of maintenance, poor safety and security measures and limited investment, curtailing launching availability for offshore industries and constraining landing, processing and service sites that connect fishing, aquaculture and other maritime economic activities.

Due to the economic importance of fisheries in the Western Cape, the government proclaimed 12 harbours in 1998 under the management of the then Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism (DEAT), now DFFE. The harbours are Arniston, Gansbaai, Gordon's Bay, Hermanus, Hout Bay, Kalk Bay, Kleinmond, Lamberts Bay, Saldanha Bay (including Pepper Bay), St Helena Bay, Still Bay and Struisbaai. Under Operation Phakisa, these 12 proclaimed fishing harbours are designated for rehabilitation and maintenance through the Small Harbours Development Unit (started in 2015). Approximately R402 million has been allocated across the 12 harbours, including removing sunken vessels, dredging, repair and upgrades to slipways, shore crane replacements, security installations and apparatus, and civil and electrical infrastructure repairs (Parliamentary Monitoring Group, 2019).

In addition to the proclaimed harbours, there are also numerous public launch sites from where small craft can be operated along the Western Cape's coastline, consisting of unproclaimed harbours and slipways, under the Management of Public Launch Sites in the Coastal Zone Regulations, 2014 (GN NO. R. 497 Government Gazette NO. 37761 of 27 June 2014).²⁸

²⁷ See <https://www.westerncape.gov.za/general-publication/western-cape-fishing-harbours-are-critical-contributors-our-economy>

²⁸ For the Western Cape, see https://sbm.gov.za/wp-content/uploads/Pages/Air_Quality/Gazette-Public-Boat-Launching-Sites-PBLS-26-June-2015.pdf

2. Methods

2.1. Approach

This study compiled community profiles of 72 main place locations that are identified fishing communities along the Western Cape coast, aiming for alignment with community profiles developed for fishing communities in the USA by NOAA's social science branch. The Western Cape communities were selected based on the active fishing status of registered fishers and/or companies found within fisher rights registration lists (see Table 1), including small-scale fishers registered via the Western Cape Registration and Verification Results rights holders lists. Towns were also included if they housed public boat launch sites (see Section 1.3.3. and Table 3). Our profiles include community histories, social and economic characteristics, available infrastructure and service provision, and involvement in fisheries. For this study, the major metropolitan area of Cape Town was excluded due to its complex make-up, and our study focuses on the surrounding five district municipalities of the Western Cape.

Table 1: Types of fisheries profiled from the South African Fishing Rights Register for Western Cape communities (excluding Cape Town Metropolitan).

Marine Living Resources Act, 1998 (Act No. 18 Of 1998) in respect of rights granted in terms of Section 18 as at 3 July 2018	Target Species	Type of Right
Section 12 of Abalone	Abalone	Long Term Right
Hake Deepsea Trawl	Hake	Long Term Right
Hake Handline	Hake	FRAP 2013
Hake Inshore Trawl	Hake and/or Sole	FRAP 2015
Hake Longline	Hake	Long Term Right
Horse Mackerel	Horse Mackerel	FRAP 2015
Large Pelagics	Large Pelagics	FRAP 2015
(Gill-)Netfish	Netfish	FRAP 2015
Oyster	Oysters	FRAP 2013
Seaweed	Seaweed	FRAP 2015
Demersal Shark	Sharks	FRAP 2013
Small Pelagics	Anchovy and Sardine	Long Term Right
Squid	Squid	FRAP 2013
Traditional Linefish	Linefish	FRAP 2013
Tuna Pole	Tuna	FRAP 2013
West Coast Rock Lobster Near	West coast rock lobster	FRAP 2013
West Coast Rock Lobster Offshore	West coast rock lobster	FRAP 2015
White Mussel	White Mussels	FRAP 2013
Fish Processing Establishments	N/A	FRAP 2015

2.2. Data Collection

Due to national Covid-19 restrictions in South Africa, a desktop approach was used to gather these data, primarily drawing on online research that was supplemented with web-based meetings and phone conversations if required. Data sources included the 2011 South African Census,²⁹ Community Survey 2016 and more recent secondary sources such as local municipal sources from annual reports. Other important sources included local tourism websites hosted by local and district municipalities. These data were publicly available and largely available online, where relevant municipal/local authority departments were virtually contacted for assistance if required. Research carried out by higher education institutions, such as the University of Cape Town, the University of the Western Cape and Stellenbosch

²⁹ At community level, the census data from 2011 was the most readily available resource. It should be noted that these data most likely are partly outdated as they are more than 10 years old, particularly as the socio-economic status of these communities have been impacted by political, economic, environmental and health stressors, including the ongoing Covid-19 global pandemic.

University, was also used to supplement detailed accounts of fishing communities through using relevant information from Masters and PhD theses. As the data collection process only involved secondary data (i.e., data that has already been collected through primary sources and made readily available for research), no ethical clearance was required for this project phase.

2.3. Data Analysis

2.3.1. Community profile characteristics

A community profile was created for each of the selected communities that included (where information was available/pertinent):

- **Location** – details on the geographic position, historical background, type of community, primary industries
- **Demographic attributes** – population size, gender and age structure, racial profile, language, unemployment rate, poverty rate
- **Inventory of features** – transportation characteristics, community facilities, existing businesses (industry), land use characteristics, aesthetic and cultural resources, healthcare and education resources (including education rate)
- **Involvement in fisheries** – species landed, characteristics of fisheries in town, fishing vessels, slipways, ports, recreational fishing activity

2.3.2. Census data

The census data, publicly available, were extracted from Statistics South Africa (StatsSA) using the online *Statssa Nesstar* tool (<http://nesstar.statssa.gov.za:8282/webview/>), the *My Municipalities* tool (http://www.statssa.gov.za/?page_id=964) and the offline *SuperTable* tool (available on CD). In alignment with StatsSA, the main terms referenced in this report are expanded in Table 2 below.

Table 2: Main terms referenced in this report in line with StatsSA definitions.

Term	Definition
Location	
Main Places	Named locations determined by StatsSA, which generally correspond to towns, small cities, regions of large cities, or traditional council areas. Areas that do not fall within any named settlement are incorporated in a main place named for the municipality.
Sub Places	Named locations determined by StatsSA, which generally correspond to suburbs, villages, or localities. When a main place contains only one sub place, that sub place is named for the main place with a suffix of “SP”.
Small Areas	The smallest output unit for census data; on average each small area contains approximately 600 people.
Demographics	
Population Group	A group with common characteristics (in terms of descent and history), particularly in relation to how they were (or would have been) classified before South African gained independence in the 1994 elections. The following categories are provided in the census: Black African, coloured, Indian or Asian, white, other.
Black African	The majority population of South Africa are those that classify themselves Black Africans, which is a culturally and linguistically diverse group. The major ethnic parts of the group are the Zulu, Xhosa, Bapedi (North Sotho), Tswana, South Ndebele, Basotho (South Sotho), Venda, Tsonga and Swazi, who predominantly speak Southern Bantu languages.
Coloured	Stemming from the apartheid-era race classification, the term “coloured” refers to South Africans who have a mixed-race heritage, coming from a combination of ethnic backgrounds including Black Africans, Indigenous South Africans, Griqua, Asians and whites. The majority of this population group is concentrated in the Cape region of South Africa.
Indian or Asian	Stemming from the policies of apartheid, Indian (synonymous with Asian under this regime) is regarded as a race group in South Africa. The majority of this group descended from indentured labourers and migrants who arrived from British India

Term	Definition
	during the late 1800s and early 1900s (and predominately reside in the Natal region of South Africa).
White	Predominantly descendants of Dutch, German, French Huguenots, English and other European settlers, where traditionally this group is divided culturally and linguistically divided into Afrikaners (who speak Afrikaans) and English-speaking groups.
Other	Captures self-classification that do not fall into the five main race categories provided by StatsSA. To note, the Khoisan of South Africa are the minority of indigenous South Africans that are conventionally classified under the Black South African population; however, some do not agree with this classification and identify as coloured or a number of expatriate Khoisan identify as other (including linguistics as separating characteristic).
Linguistics	
Language	South Africa is a multilingual country with 11 official languages (Afrikaans, English, Ndebele, Sotho, Southern Sotho, Swati, Tsonga, Tswana, Venda, Xhosa and Zulu), each of which is guaranteed equal status. Most South Africans are multilingual and able to speak at least two or more of the official languages. For governance purposes, the Western Cape uses Afrikaans (the most widely used language in this region), isiXhosa and English.

For the level of education within each community profile extracted from the Census 2011 data, we have placed the focus on individuals (as a percentage) who have had no schooling **or** fully completed primary **or** fully completed high school **or** fully completed a tertiary degree (where applicable to each profile). Therefore, these education categories combined do not necessarily add up to 100 %, as they do not include values from other census selection categories like “no answer”, “not applicable” or “partial completion”.

Similarly for the employment status within each community profile, we have focused on individuals (as a percentage) who are either formally employed **or** informally employed **or** employed in a private household **or** retired. The “retired” category can also refer to unknown employment status. Therefore, these employment categories combined do not necessarily add up to 100 %, as they do not include values from other selection categories such as “not applicable”.

StatsSA determines three national poverty lines (food, lower-bound and upper-bound) for South Africa on an annual basis, calculated as a per person per month rate in ZAR. The food (i.e., extreme) poverty line is the amount of money an individual will need to afford the minimum required daily energy intake (R335 in 2011). The lower-bound poverty line is the food poverty line plus the average amount derived from non-food items of households whose expenditure is equal to the food poverty line (R501 in 2011). The upper-bound poverty line (UBPL)³⁰ is the food poverty line amount derived from non-food items of households whose food expenditure is equal to the food poverty line (R779 in 2011). For this report, we focused on families living below the UBPL to describe the poverty status within each community profile. Income data per the census may have inaccuracies because the information relies on self-reporting of the person answering the survey on behalf of the household.

2.3.3. Spatial planning characteristics

Given the complex geographic considerations of urban planning based on the previous apartheid regime, community profiles were organised according to municipal demarcations in line with the best available census data. Each community profile is named according to main place; however, this is then broken down to capture the finer details of interconnected communities within each main place. Due to the prior urban planning model under the apartheid and its accompanying Group Areas Act, typically all urban areas in South Africa consisted of a more developed commercial and residential area where

³⁰ As a point of reference, in 2021, the UBPL was set at R1 335.00 per person per month. Typical monthly expenses for a decent standard of living were regarded to be R7 911.00 per adult per month in 2021 (See <http://www.statssa.gov.za/publications/P03101/P031012021.pdf>).

only white people were permitted to live (Strauss 2019). Adjacent settlement areas (which were not well developed) or satellite townships housed non-white people, where they generally commuted in and out of the formal white areas for work during the day. Some satellite townships could be located several kilometres away from formal urban hubs. The legacy of forced removals stems from this planning model of apartheid. This spatial dynamic still persists across South Africa, where poorer, formally disadvantaged people still predominantly reside in settlements. At the same time, wealthier classes (mainly white residents in smaller urban areas) live in former “whites only” residential areas. However, this dynamic is changing across the country as many neighbourhoods have become more diverse due to the expanding non-white middle class.

Settlement areas are characterised by high poverty levels and limited formal infrastructure, where most residents are of colour. In most settlements, residents reside mainly in Reconstruction and Development Program (RDP) housing. This housing is classified as rent-free housing according to the 2011 Census, as the government provides it based on the previously disadvantaged/low socio-economic status of qualifying communities. In the earlier years, RDP housing was criticised for focusing on quantity rather than quality when low-cost housing was provided in South Africa post-independence. While some RDP housing units have electricity meter devices, most inhabitants cannot afford to purchase prepaid electricity units (once they have used the allocated free electricity units) and tend to rely on alternatives such as gas, wood fire and candles. While most rent-free housing units also contain a fitted toilet, there are often no shower or bath facilities – just a tap (for example, see Williams (2013)). Other problems commonly associated with RDP housing include leakage, insufficient foundations and poor building quality (for example, see Stellenbosch University (2013)).

3. Community Profiles

The community profiles are based on geography distribution, starting from the northern point of the Western Cape border, moving south- and then eastwards along the coastline until the eastern extent of the province (Figure 4). The profiles are organised via District Municipality and Local Municipality, which follow a geographic ordering based on the north to east movement along the coastline.

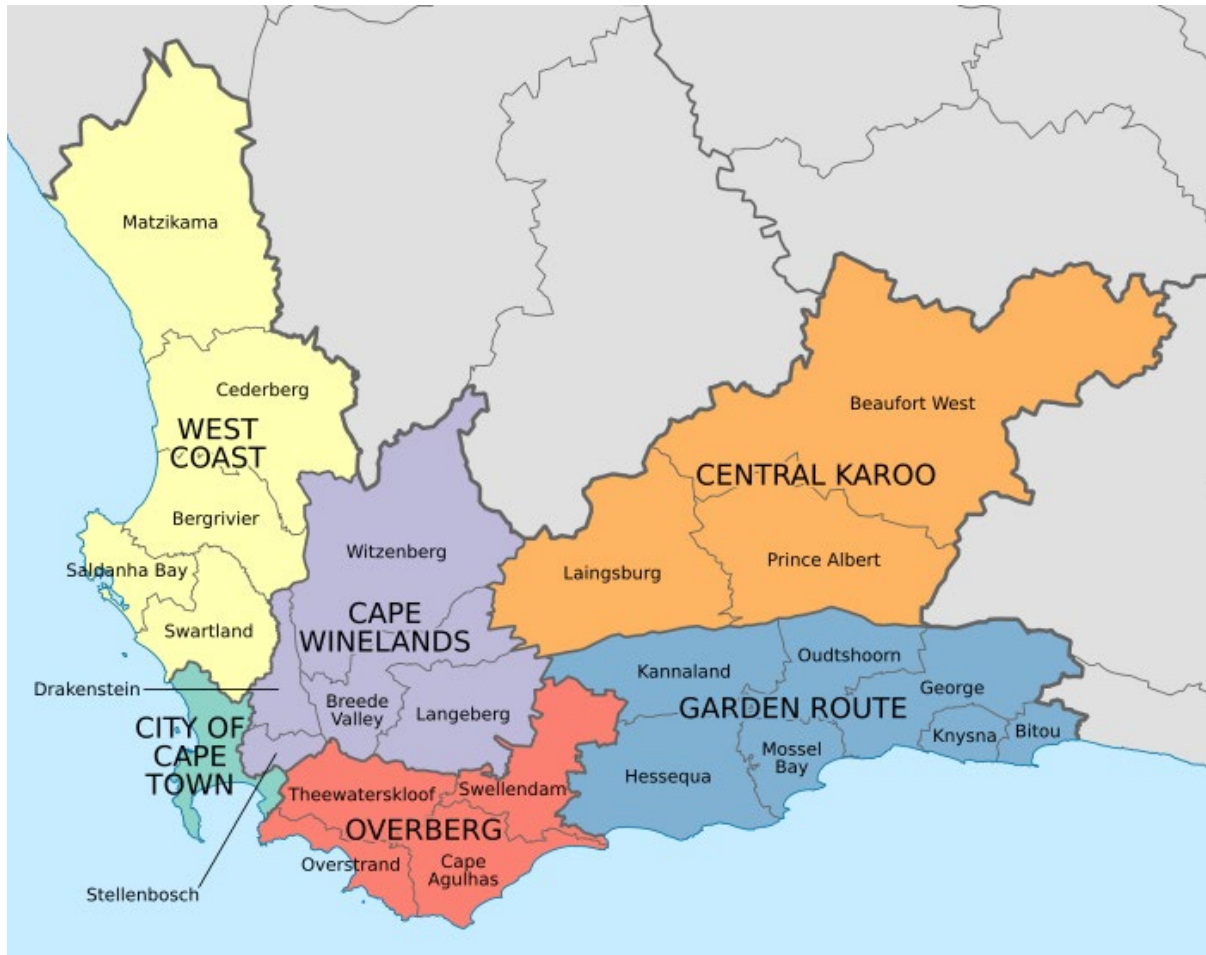


Figure 4: The Western Cape is divided into one metropolitan municipality (the City of Cape Town) and five district municipalities for local government purposes (Wikipedia, 2021).

Table 3 presents an overview of selected communities profiled by District Municipality and Local Municipality. Communities are grouped according to Main Place and detailed sub-profiles are given where appropriate (as per StatsSA and described in Section 2 Methods).

Table 3: Community profiles geographically distributed according to municipal demarcations.

District Municipality	Local Municipality	Community (based on Main Place)	Number of fishery Rights holders (from fisher rights registration lists)
West Coast	Matzikama	Lutzville	1 small-scale fisher
		Ebenhaeser	1 net fish (beach-seine) treknet and gillnet (drift-net, set-net), 1 West Coast rock lobster (offshore)
		Papendorp	5 small-scale fishers
		Strandfontein	<i>Public launch site</i>
		Doringbaai	55 small-scale fishers, 4 West Coast rock lobster (nearshore), 3 traditional linefish, 1 net fish (beach-seine) treknet and gillnet (drift-net, set-net), 1 abalone,

District Municipality	Local Municipality	Community (based on Main Place)	Number of fishery Rights holders (from fisher rights registration lists)
			1 large pelagics, 1 small (anchovy & sardine) pelagics, 1 tuna pole, 1 West Coast rock lobster (offshore), 1 white mussel
		Klawer	1 net fish (beach-seine) treknet and gillnet (drift-net, set-net)
	Cederberg	Clanwilliam	1 (address for) abalone & seaweed, 1 West Coast rock lobster (offshore)
		Lamberts Bay (including Malkopbaai)	57 West Coast rock lobster (nearshore), 12 West Coast rock lobster (offshore), 4 tuna pole, 2 hake longline, 2 small (anchovy & sardine) pelagics, 2 white mussel, 1 fish processing establishment, 1 abalone, 1 large pelagics, 1 net fish (beach-seine) treknet and gillnet (drift-net, set-net), 1 small (sardine only) pelagics, 1 traditional linefish
		Elands Bay	92 small-scale fishers, 10 West Coast rock lobster (nearshore), 10 white mussel, 6 West Coast rock lobster (offshore), 4 fish processing establishments, 4 net fish (beach-seine) treknet and gillnet (drift-net, set-net), 4 traditional linefish, 1 hake longline, 1 large pelagics
	Bergrivier	Redelinghuys	1 West Coast rock lobster (nearshore)
		Aurora	1 traditional linefish
		Dwarskersbos	3 net fish (beach-seine) treknet and gillnet (drift-net, set-net)
		Porterville	1 fish processing establishment
		Velddrif	42 net fish (beach-seine) treknet and gillnet (drift-net, set-net), 28 small-scale fishers, 6 West Coast rock lobster (nearshore), 4 small (anchovy & sardine) pelagics, 3 fish processing establishments, 1 hake inshore trawl (hake and sole), 1 West Coast rock lobster (offshore), 1 white mussel
	Saldanha Bay	St Helena Bay	56, small-scale fishers (Laingville), 19 small-scale fishers (Stompneusbaai) and 18 small-scale fishers (Steenberg's Cove), 14 net fish (beach-seine) treknet and gillnet (drift-net, set-net), 7 West Coast rock lobster (offshore), 5 small (anchovy & sardine) pelagics, 4 fish processing establishments, 3 hake deep sea trawl, 3 hake longline, 3 traditional linefish, 3 small (sardine only) pelagics, 2 tuna pole, 1 abalone, 1 horse mackerel, 1 squid, 1 West Coast rock lobster (nearshore)
		Paternoster	41 small-scale fishers, 13 West Coast rock lobster (nearshore), 4 West Coast rock lobster (offshore), 2 fish processing establishments, 2 small (anchovy & sardine) pelagics, 2 white mussel
		Jacob's Bay	Public launch site

District Municipality	Local Municipality	Community (based on Main Place)	Number of fishery Rights holders (from fisher rights registration lists)
		Vredenburg	6 West Coast rock lobster (offshore), 4 net fish (beach-seine) treknet and gillnet (drift-net, set-net), 2 deep sea hake trawl, 2 hake longline, 2 small (anchovy & sardine) pelagics, 2 West Coast rock lobster (nearshore), 2 white mussel, 1 hake handline, 1 small (sardine only) pelagics, 2 traditional linefish, 1 tuna pole
		Saldanha Bay	47 small-scale fishers (Saldanha Bay and 2 small-scale fishers (White City), 9 traditional linefish, 7 net fish (beach-seine) treknet and gillnet (drift-net, set-net), 4 West Coast rock lobster (offshore), 3 tuna pole, 2 fish processing establishments, 2 small (anchovy & sardine) pelagics, 2 West Coast rock lobster (nearshore), 1 hake handline, 1 hake longline
		Langebaan	33 small-scale fishers, 9 net fish (beach-seine) treknet and gillnet (drift-net, set-net), 2 abalone, 2 West Coast rock lobster (offshore), 1 fish processing establishment, 1 large pelagics, 1 traditional linefish
		Hopefield	8 small-scale fishers, 1 large pelagics, 1 small (anchovy & sardine) pelagics, 1 traditional linefish, 1 West Coast rock lobster (offshore)
	Swartland	Yzerfontein	16 small-scale fishers, 15 traditional linefish, 1 net fish (beach-seine) treknet and gillnet (drift-net, set-net), 1 white mussel
		Malmesbury	2 fish processing establishments
Overberg	Theewaterskloof	Genadendal	1 traditional linefish
		Botrivier	3 small-scale fishers
		Rooi Els	<i>Public launch site</i>
	Overstrand	Pringle Bay	4 small-scale fishers, 1 West Coast rock lobster (nearshore)
		Betty's Bay	7 small-scale fishers, 4 West Coast rock lobster (nearshore), 3 West Coast rock lobster (nearshore), 1 abalone, 1 traditional linefish
		Kleinmond	11 abalone, 6 traditional linefish, 4 small-scale fishers, 2 West Coast rock lobster (offshore), 1 small (anchovy & sardine) pelagics, 1 tuna pole
		Fisherhaven	6 abalone, 2 West Coast rock lobster (offshore)
		Hawston	179 small-scale fishers, 111 abalone, 31 traditional linefish, 7 West Coast rock lobster (offshore), 1 hake handline, 1 seaweed, 1 small (sardine) pelagics
		Onrusrivier	11 abalone, 1 seaweed, 1 traditional linefish

District Municipality	Local Municipality	Community (based on Main Place)	Number of fishery Rights holders (from fisher rights registration lists)
		Sandbaai	9 abalone, 1 fish processing establishment, 1 West Coast rock lobster (nearshore)
		Zwelihle	7 small-scale fishers, 4 traditional linefish, 3 West Coast rock lobster (nearshore), 2 abalone, 1 hake longline, 1 West Coast rock lobster (offshore)
		Hermanus	38 small-scale fishers (Mount Pleasant) and 11 small-scale fishers (Westdene), 31 abalone, 6 fish processing establishments, 5 traditional linefish, 4 West Coast rock lobster (offshore), 3 small (sardine) pelagics, 1 horse mackerel, 1 tuna pole
		Gansbaai	24 abalone, 20 traditional linefish, 16 small-scale fishers (Blompark), 7 small-scale fishers (Masakhane), 6 fish processing establishments, 2 hake handline, 2 oyster, 2 small (anchovy and sardine) pelagics, 2 West Coast rock lobster (offshore), 1 hake deep sea trawl, 1 hake inshore trawl (hake and sole), 1 hake longline, 1 horse mackerel, 1 large pelagics, 1 tuna pole
		Van Dyksbaai	<i>Public launch site (Kleinbaai)</i>
		Franskraal	1 abalone
		Pearly Beach	55 small-scale fishers (includes Eluxolweni); 5 abalone, 2 West Coast rock lobster (offshore)
		Buffeljagsbaai	47 small-scale fishers, 15 abalone (Bredasdorp), 4 West Coast rock lobster (nearshore) (Bredasdorp), 2 traditional linefish (Bredasdorp)
	Cape Agulhas	Elim	18 small-scale fishers, 1 traditional linefish
		Suiderstrand	<i>Public launch site</i>
		L'Agulhas	1 traditional linefish
		Struisbaai	57 small-scale fishers, 16 traditional linefish, 2 abalone, 1 fish processing establishment, 1 small (anchovy & sardine) pelagics, 1 hake handline, 1 hake longline, 1 squid
		Arniston	74 small-scale fishers, 11 traditional linefish, 4 hake handline, 4 oyster, 3 hake longline, 1 West Coast rock lobster (offshore)
		Bredasdorp	14 small-scale fishers, 1 West Coast rock lobster (offshore)
	Swellendam	Infanta	<i>Public launch site</i>
Garden Route	Hessequa	Port Beaufort (including Witsand)	1 hake longline, 1 traditional linefish
		Slangrivier	9 small-scale fishers, 1 oyster
		Riversdale	1 traditional linefish (Vermaaklikheid)
		Vermaaklikheid	7 small-scale fishers, 2 traditional linefish, 1 hake handline
		Melkhoutfontein	29 small-scale fishers, 2 traditional linefish, 1 hake handline, 1 oyster

District Municipality	Local Municipality	Community (based on Main Place)	Number of fishery Rights holders (from fisher rights registration lists)
		Stilbaai	16 small-scale fishers, 9 traditional linefish, 3 hake handline, 1 oyster
		Gouritsmond	18 small-scale fishers, 2 traditional linefish, 1 hake handline
	Mossel bay	Herbertsdale	1 small-scale fisher (Mossel Bay)
		Kwanonqaba	3 small-scale fishers
		Mossel Bay	5 small-scale fishers (Asla) and 2 small-scale fishers (Tarka), 9 traditional linefish, 8 hake handline, 7 fish processing establishments, 6 oyster, 5 hake longline, 2 hake deep sea trawl, 2 hake inshore trawl (hake and sole), 1 demersal shark, 1 small (anchovy & sardine) pelagics, 1 large pelagics, 1 squid
		Hartenbos	3 hake handline, 2 oyster
		Klein Brak River	8 oyster, 1 fish processing establishment
		Groot Brak River	10 oyster, 1 hake handline
	George	Wilderness	10 small-scale fishers (Touwsranteen)
	Knysna	Sedgefield	42 small-scale fishers (Smutsville), 8 oyster
		Rheenendal	6 small-scale fishers
		Buffelsbaai	<i>Public launch site</i>
		Knysna	72 small-scale fishers (Hornlee), 4 traditional linefish, 3 hake handline
	Bitou	Kranshoek	37 small-scale fishers
		Kwanokuthula	9 small-scale fishers
		New Horizons	5 small-scale fishers, 2 oyster, 1 traditional linefish
		Plettenberg Bay	3 hake longline, 1 fish processing establishment, 1 squid
		Witterdrift	1 small-scale fisher
		Kurland	19 small-scale fishers
		Covie	14 small-scale fishers

3.1. West Coast District Municipality

The West Coast District is bounded by the neighbouring Northern Cape Province in the north and stretches south to the Cape Winelands District and Cape Metro. A unique characteristic of the District is that all five local municipalities (i.e., Swartland, Berggrivier, Matzikama, Cederberg and Saldanha Bay) include portions of the approximately 350 km of coastline area along the Atlantic Ocean to the west (Figure 5). Along this stretch of coastline is a series of historic towns and fishing villages. The population size for the district is 472 559, primarily represented by the coloured population group at 63.9 % (West Coast District Municipality, 2020). The top three Gross Value Added (GVA) sectors include finance, manufacturing and agriculture. The 10-year trend revealed that the agriculture, forestry and fishing sector had the highest average growth rates at 4.3 %.



Figure 5: West Coast District Municipality with five local municipalities and key urban areas (Western Cape Government, 2021).

3.1.1. Matzikama Local Municipality

The three largest sectors in the Matzikama Municipality are commercial services (34.3 % of local GDP), agriculture, forestry and fishing (24.3 % of local GDP) and government, community, social and personal services (16.5 % of local GDP). The Matzikama Municipality Annual 2019 Report notes that fishing is a key economic sector for this local municipality, limited to recreational and small fishing rights. While dwindling fish stock has resulted in the fishing industry closure along the West Coast of the Western Cape, including Doringbaai, this municipality notes that the ocean still plays a vital income-generating role for the many small-scale subsistence fishers in the area³¹ (Matzikama Municipality, 2019).

³¹ The municipality has initiated a Local Economic Development strategy that includes working closely with fishing communities. Specifically, the development of the *Vlekplek* area as an economic development project and possible tourism attraction aims to give opportunities to the fishing communities in the Matzikama area where entrepreneurs can sell fried fish, chips, etc. (Matzikama Municipality, 2019).

Lutzville

Location

The main place of Lutzville is located next to the Olifants River, approximately 20 km inland from the West Coast in the Western Cape (31.5532° S, 18.3475° E). Lutzville falls under the jurisdiction of the Matzikama Local Municipality and West Coast District Municipality. The town is divided into two sub places, consisting of the commercial and residential town area of Lutzville and its adjoining settlement of Uitkyk. Matzikama is characterized by an arid environment served by the Olifants River which supports a flourishing agricultural sector mainly built on viniculture (Matzikama Municipality, 2019). The population for this local municipality is therefore concentrated along the river.

Lutzville developed from a farm established in 1923 where farming activities dominate the local landscape. The town is located in a wine and agricultural producing valley and therefore accommodates many of the workers employed by the surrounding farms and Namaqua Sands (Matzikama Municipality, 2019). Lutzville is also located on the West Coast Tourism Route, where tourism can add significantly to the economic base of the local urban economy and is linked to the wine industry, annual agriculture expo and annual wildflower season (Matzikama Municipality, 2019).

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Lutzville had 1382 households and a population size of 5 232 (2 244.18 per km²), with an even 50 % split between males and females. Lutzville had a relatively young population, where the median age was 26 years. Most of the population identified as coloured (75 %), followed by 13 % white and 10 % Black African. Most residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (91 %), followed by 4 % isiXhosa. For residents of the town, 3 % had received no schooling, 5 % had completed primary school and 18 % had completed their secondary education. According to the Census 2011 data, 8 % of the population were unemployed, where youth (15 – 35-year-olds) unemployment was 16 %. Where employed, 28 % of residents were formally employed and 68 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 47 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011).

Inventory of features

Infrastructure and service provision can be rated as in good condition for the town, where access in and around the town is largely via tarred roads. Major services such as shopping, banking, postal, traffic and law enforcement, vehicle registration and licensing, religious, public library and other facilities are available in the town. According to the Census 2011 data, most residents resided in formal housing (86 %) (the remaining 14 % resided in informal housing), where 43 % lived in rent-free housing,³² 27 % owned their property with no bond and 7 % with a bond, and 21 % lived in rentals. Most residents had access to electricity (96 %), piped water within their homes (83 %), weekly refuse removal services (99 %) and a flush toilet with a formal sewerage system (89 %).

Lutzville is a key hub within the municipality as it provides services to surrounding rural areas such as Ebenhaeser and Papendorp.³³ Importantly, the town serves as an education hub for surrounding rural areas. Many children from surrounding villages attend the high school in Lutzville, as towns such as Ebenhaeser, Papendorp and Doringbaai, do not have secondary education facilities.

Involvement in fisheries

According to the Western Cape Registration and Verification Results rights holders list, one small-scale fisher is registered in Lutzville. The town is located on the banks of the Olifants River, where it is

³² This housing under the RDP scheme is provided by the government based on previously disadvantaged/low socio-economic status of eligible residents – see Section 2.3.3 for further details.

³³ Significant strategic risks across the local municipality include drought management, economic growth and development, and insufficient housing resources for emergency relocations. In general, the maintenance of municipal infrastructure remains a key challenge for the Matzikama Municipality, largely linked to poor roads and increases in electricity lost on account of ageing infrastructure in some areas (Matzikama Municipality, 2019).

possible to navigate in a flat-bottomed boat to Papendorp at high tide, approximately 30 km downstream near the mouth of the river. While Lutzville is an agricultural hub, subsistence fishing targeting harders in the Olifants estuary has been present in the area for generations and is still practised today (Sowman, 2003).

While harder fishing has always been a popular activity for amateur and professional fishers in the wider Western Cape coastal area, historically, this fishery was not considered commercially important and has received little attention by fisheries management in the past. Only after 1967, when professional beach-seine operators in St Helena Bay noted declines in harder catch rates, did regulations begin to be implemented for this fishery (Sowman, 2003). The gillnet fishery, now recognised for its importance to small-scale or subsistence fishers in this region, largely operates in the Olifants estuary and targets harders.

Ebenhaeser

Location

The main place of Ebenhaeser is located near the banks of the perennial Olifants River (31°35'8"S, 18°14'39"E), about 15 km upstream from the river mouth on the West Coast in the Western Cape. Ebenhaeser falls under the jurisdiction of the Matzikama Local Municipality and West Coast District Municipality. The area consists of several smaller settlements, including Hopland, Olifantsdrift, Rooierwe and Nuwepos. The surrounding areas include the settlement of Papendorp, considered to be an extended part of Ebenhaeser (Williams, 2013). The main place of Papendorp is expanded in the following section.

The community residing in the greater Ebenhaeser area on the banks of the Olifants River constitute descendants of the indigenous communities who permanently settled in the area in the 17th century, such as descendants of Captain Andries Louis, leader of the Khoikhoi. Previously, these communities had settled on farmlands near present-day Lutzville, where Captain Andries Louis invited the Rhenish Mission Society to establish a mission in the area in the 1830s. However, the coloured community of Ebenhaeser were forcibly removed in 1926 and relocated to the unfertile lands adjacent to the Olifants Estuary (Williams, 2013). Therefore, these communities have relied on fishing from the estuary for generations; however, diminishing catches in recent years have pushed residents to find supplemental livelihoods (Williams, 2013).

After independence in South Africa, the Ebenhaeser community lodged a claim in 1996 for the restitution of the land lost under the 1925 Exchange Act, where an investigation examined historical claims to rights in land, including the fishing rights of the community and access and use of the river and the river mouth (Williams, 2013). Subsequently, in 2020, an agreement was reached for the restitution of most of the land lost by the Ebenhaeser community in 1926, including substantial government funding to help the community manage the restored farms (Yeld, 2020).

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Ebenhaeser had 404 households and a population size of 1305 (1927.15 per km²), where 51 % were female and 49 % male. The median age in the town was 28 years. Most of the population identified as coloured (99 %), where most residents spoke Afrikaans as their first language (97 %). There are no schools available in the surrounding settlement areas and there is only one primary school available in Ebenhaeser, where children attend secondary school in Lutzville or Vredendal or elsewhere. In Ebenhaeser, 2 % of the residents had received no schooling, 7 % had completed primary school, 12 % had completed their secondary education and 5 % had a higher level of education. The unemployment rate was 20 %, where youth (15 – 35-year-olds) unemployment was at 35 %. Where employed, 17 % were formally employed, 4 % were informally employed and 78 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 43 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011).

Inventory of features

In general, the maintenance of municipal infrastructure is a key challenge in terms of poor roads and increases in electricity lost because of aging infrastructure in some areas (Matzikama Municipality, 2019). Access to the wider Ebenhaeser area is via gravel roads, where one tarred road leads into Ebenhaeser from the main highway. Ebenhaeser has limited infrastructure (unlike Lutzville), where some infrastructure and service provision are available such as small shop vendors, postal service and small library. However, there is no doctor or clinic, and a mobile clinic services the area once a week (Williams, 2013). Consequently, for various goods and other services such as banking facilities or pharmacies, Ebenhaeser residents travel to Lutzville (15 km away) or Vredendal (20 km away).

According to the Census 2011 data, most Ebenhaeser residents resided in formal housing (99 %), where 56 % owned their property (no bond), 34 % lived in rent-free housing, and 10 % lived in rentals. All residents had access to electricity and weekly refuse removal services. Most residents had access to a flush toilet with a formal sewerage system (99 %) and piped water within their homes (88 %). For settlement areas, RDP housing has limited space and some households are very crowded as a result. While most of these households had access to a pre-paid electricity meter and piped water inside the house, there were limited sanitation facilities (Williams, 2013).

Involvement in fisheries

The Olifants River Estuary is the country's second most important estuary in terms of drainage area.³⁴ While the ecological importance of estuaries is extensive, these areas are also popular sites for human activity and recreational fishing activities take place in the river, where boats move between Ebenhaeser and Papendorp. A fishery of interest within the Matzikama Municipality is the Olifants River harder fishery, which has implications for small-scale or subsistence fishers living along the Olifants River from Lutzville to Ebenhaeser and Papendorp. Catches in the Olifants River gillnet fishery are dominated by harders, endemic to South Africa, occurring in coastal waters from Namibia to KwaZulu-Natal. Harders are targeted by both the marine fishery using beach-seine nets and the gillnet fishery (primarily operating in estuaries), where the highest concentration of these two fisheries is located on the West Coast (Sowman 2003).

The community of Ebenhaeser has been dependent on the Olifants estuary for over a century, where the tradition of fishing for harders at the estuary has been sustained over generations (Sowman 2003). Within the wider Ebenhaeser area (including Papendorp), approximately 120 fishing families rely on fishing for subsistence purposes and as a livelihood contribution (Sowman, 2017). Primary commercial fishing activities that take place include net fishing and offshore West Coast rock lobster catches. Fishing predominantly takes place in the lower 15 km of the Olifants River estuary and harders are harvested with gillnets³⁵. These gillnets are set and regularly checked from non-motorised, rowing boats colloquially referred to as *bakkies*. Several fishers own *bakkies* and those who do not work together with owners to use their boats (Williams, 2013). The co-management process of this estuarine resource in the Olifants River was initiated in the 1990s to support poorer communities dependent on diminishing harder resources; however, this process has complex, challenging and remains largely unresolved between different government departments, natural resource managers and community stakeholders (Sowman 2003, Williams, 2013). Fishers also engage in activities in other coastal towns, going to sea (for lobster and linefish activities) or taking part in seasonal employment and/or the fish processing factory historically operating from Doringbaai (Williams 2013).

Papendorp

Location

The main place of Papendorp is located on the West Coast in the Western Cape (31°42'S, 18°13'E), under the jurisdiction of the Matzikama Local Municipality and West Coast District Municipality. Set

³⁴ See https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_estuaries_of_South_Africa

³⁵ The use of gillnets has been prohibited in estuarine environments in South Africa; however, their use is still permitted at the Olifants River estuary (Williams 2013).

back about a kilometre from the sea, the few dwellings overlook the Oliphant's River, floodplains, salt pans and abundant bird life. The river opens out onto the beach, accessible only on foot. Papendorp derives its livelihood from fishing in the estuary and from salt gathering at the nearby salt pans, where salt is still processed traditionally. Remnants of the old reed-and-mud houses where the fishermen lived in the past can still be seen. Another attraction is archaeological remains in the form of shell middens.³⁶

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Papendorp had 303 households and a population size of 1205 (6.38 per km²), where 53 % were female and 47 % male. The median age in the town was 29 years. Most of the population identified as coloured (91 %), followed by 8 % white. The majority spoke Afrikaans as their home language (95 %). As there are no schools locally available in the settlement, children typically are transported to Ebenhaeser to attend the only primary school in the area, or further afield to attend high school in Lutzville or Vredendal. For residents of the town, 4 % had received no schooling, 4 % had completed primary school and 8 % completed their secondary education.

In 2011, the unemployment rate was 17 %, where youth (15 – 35-year-olds) unemployment was at 34 %. Where employed, 14 % were formally employed, 8 % were informally employed and 78 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 68 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011). Notably, 61 % of households with a head of 64 years old or less lived under the UBPL and the median age of the household head was 50 years, indicating high poverty levels in younger households. Furthermore, men often move away to look for work while women remain behind to raise families – in Papendorp, 40 % of households were female-headed in 2011, somewhat above the Western Cape average of 37.6 % in 2019 (Galal, 2021).

Inventory of features

Limited infrastructure and basic service provision are available within this settlement, where access is predominately available via gravel roads. No shopping facilities are available locally and main services such as medical, postal, banking, vendors and schooling are located in neighbouring Ebenhaeser. According to the Census 2011 data, most residents resided in formal housing (96 %), where 73 % owned their property (no bond), 14 % lived in rent-free housing and 10 % lived in rentals. Most residents had access to electricity (95 %), piped water within their homes (80 %), weekly refuse removal services (88 %) and a flush toilet with a formal sewerage system (81 %).

There is a public launch site located in Papendorp that is managed by the Matzikama Municipality. The Olifants River estuary at Papendorp provides line fishing opportunities (popular within the recreational fishing sector) along the coast, where catches typically include silver kob, Angolan kob, white steenbras, west coast steenbras (*Lithognathus aureti*) and elf (*Pomatomus saltatrix*), depending on season. It is possible to arrange recreational fishing trips from Papendorp.³⁷

Involvement in fisheries

According to the Western Cape Registration and Verification Results rights holders list, there are five small-scale fishers registered in Papendorp. As discussed under the Ebenhaeser community section, the Olifants gillnet fishery (primarily targeting harders) is a vital livelihood activity for the local community, primarily used for subsistence purposes. The surplus is typically limited and sold locally (usually to surrounding farmers or farm workers) either fresh or salted and dried as a bundle colloquially referred to as *bokkoms* (Sowman, 2003). *Bokkoms* are considered to be a traditional Western Cape delicacy.

Over the last two decades, the traditional small-scale fishers of the Olifants estuary have faced increased pressure from conservation strategies to close the gillnet fishery, as well as mining activities proposed along the banks of the river (Sowman, 2017). While small-scale fishers have been recognised through

³⁶ See www.places.co.za

³⁷ See <http://www.namaquawestcoast.com/weskus-fishermen/>

the Small-scale Fisheries Policy (promulgated in 2012 and locally implemented from 2015), the implementation process has been administratively complex with limited communication from government partners and a lack of capacity at local level to fully embrace the new policy. Therefore, not all traditional small-scale fishers in these communities have been able to successfully register (Sowman, 2017) and this process is now under national review for the Western Cape.³⁸

Strandfontein

Location

The main place of Strandfontein is situated at the mouth of the Olifants River on the West Coast in the Western Cape (34.076°S, 18.573°E), under the jurisdiction of the Matzikama Local Municipality and West Coast District Municipality. The town's name translates to *beach fountain* due to the presence of a freshwater fountain on the beach used by initially by the Khoisan and then European settlers.³⁹

A small seaside village, this holiday resort and retirement town was historically designated for whites only under the apartheid regime. Today, Strandfontein has become a popular holiday destination due to Southern Right whales viewing opportunities, which come close into the protective bay during their calving season.⁴⁰ Of the 131 towns situated in the Western Cape Province, Strandfontein was ranked 28th in terms of composite development potential and second in terms of composite resource potential (Matzikama Municipality, 2019).

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Strandfontein had 92 households and a population size of 431 (103.20 per km²), where 51 % were female and 49 % male. The median age in the town was 41 years. Just over half of the population identified as Black African (51 %), followed by 33 % white and 15 % coloured. The majority spoke Afrikaans as their home language (69 %), followed by 23 % isiXhosa and 3 % English. For residents of the town, 1 % had completed primary school, 12 % had completed their secondary education and 6 % of residents had a higher level of education. The unemployment rate was low at 6 %, where youth (15 – 35-year-olds) unemployment was at 10 %. Where employed, 7 % were formally employed, 2 % were informally employed and 89 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 62 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011).

Inventory of features

Infrastructure and service provision are in good condition, with access via tarred roads. According to the Census 2011 data, most residents resided in formal housing (82 %), where 41 % owned their property (no bond), 24 % lived in rent-free housing, and 26 % lived in rentals. Most residents had access to electricity (94 %), piped water within their homes (83 %), weekly refuse removal services (94 %) and a flush toilet with a formal sewerage system (90 %).

As a holiday village, Strandfontein has a well-developed services sector with accompanying guest accommodation, shops and restaurants to cater for holidaymakers. There is also the Strandfontein West Coast Information Centre that provides information on tourist activities, including recreational fishing. Key features include a playground and tidal pool on the beach, as well as a host of activities such as Bird Island Nature Reserve, Cape West Coast Biosphere Reserve, Olifants River Estuary, water sports, fishing, hiking and birdwatching.⁴¹

³⁸ See <https://www.timeslive.co.za/news/south-africa/2021-02-20-small-scale-fishing-rights-in-western-cape-set-to-be-scrapped-says-creecy/>

³⁹ See www.sa-venues.com

⁴⁰ See www.sa-venues.com

⁴¹ See www.west-coast-info.co.za

Involvement in fisheries

Strandfontein has a slipway from which to launch rubber boats, which is a public launch site managed by the Matzikama Municipality. Its long white sandy beach attracts anglers and other recreational fishers due to the abundance of West Coast rock lobster and mussels found here.⁴² As this is a holiday and retirement village, fishing activities are limited mainly to recreational users for people who reside or visit the community.

Doringbaai

Location

The main place of Doringbaai is located on the West Coast in the Western Cape (31°49'S, 18°14'E), under the jurisdiction of the Matzikama Local Municipality and West Coast District Municipality. Previously known under its English name Thornbay, the bay at Doringbaai was used to anchor boats that were used for trade, where supplies were off-loaded and transported via camel to inland areas due to the lack of road infrastructure. In 1925, the North Bay Canning Company established a crayfish (i.e., West Coast rock lobster) packing factory and Doringbaai turned into a town (Stellenbosch University, 2013).

However, by the 1970s, the West Coast fishing industry began its decline and major fishing companies moved southwards due to transport costs and diminishing marine stocks due to overfishing. Due to regulations introduced in the 1980s in an effort to limit marine resource harvesting, the Doringbaai fish factory closed and the Oceana fishing fleet was subsequently removed in the 1990s. Only the processing division of the crayfish factory continued to operate, predominately providing employment to women in the community, while many fishers were left without formal employment. However, in 2006 the Oceana Crayfish Factory closed after 75 years of operation in Doringbaai, which substantially impacted the community as the factory was a major source of formal employment and income (Stellenbosch University, 2013).

The Doringbaai Development Trust was then formed in 2007 as a community-based vehicle to encourage municipal and private investment into the town. Subsequently, Fryers Cove Winery took up residence in the disused fish factory in Doringbaai harbour and donates towards the Trust.⁴³ The Doring Bay Abalone Farm was also established via the Trust and has been operating since 2013, where the community owns a majority share in this commercial abalone farm.⁴⁴

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Doringbaai had 315 households and a population size of 1260 (704.74 per km²), where 51 % were female and 49 % male. The median age in the town was 28 years. Most of the population identified as coloured (90 %), followed by 7 % white. Most residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (96 %). Doringbaai only has a primary school and the nearest high school is located in Lutzville (35 km away). Transport to neighbouring schools is expensive and the school fees are costly, thus limiting some of the poorer community members to completing primary school only (Stellenbosch University, 2013). For residents in Doringbaai, 2 % had received no schooling, 8 % had completed primary school and 16 % had completed their secondary education (StatsSA, 2011).

In 2011, the unemployment rate was 20 %, while youth (15 – 35-year-olds) unemployment was 35 %. Youth generally had a narrow vision of their future, particularly in the poorer community, where young men typically considered a sea-based livelihood as their only option (possibly due to lower education levels and lack of skills) (Stellenbosch University, 2013). Where employed, 26 % were formally employed and 70 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 55 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA,

⁴² See www.sa-venues.com

⁴³ See <https://fryerscove.co.za>

⁴⁴ See <https://doringbayabalone.co.za>

2011). Men often move away to look for work while women remain behind to raise families – in Doringbaai, 43 % of households were female-headed in 2011, which is above the Western Cape average of 37.6 % and somewhat above the national average of 41.8 % in 2019 (Galal, 2021).

Inventory of features

Infrastructure and service provision are in fair condition, where the town has a small general store, restaurant and pub, fish shop, liquor stores, a clinic that operates twice a week, post office, traffic and law enforcement branch, municipal library (which requires upgrades as note by the Annual Matzikama Municipality Report) and a primary school. Residents tend to rely on neighbouring towns such as Lutzville (35km away) for major services such as hospitals, banking or shopping. Access is still largely via gravel roads within the community and between Lamberts Bay, while the main access road from the highway is tarred.

The Doringbaai community is spatially divided between the wealthier population residing on the northern side and the poorer fishing community living in the southern section. The wealthier area consists of suburban homes (largely for holiday use), formal businesses and municipal facilities. The poorer area has a mix of old fishing cottages, RDP housing and informal dwellings and businesses (Stellenbosch University, 2013). According to the Census 2011 data, most residents resided in formal housing (97 %), where 57 % owned their property (no bond), 23 % lived in rent-free housing and 15 % lived in rentals. All residents had access to weekly refuse removal services. Most residents had access to electricity (93 %), piped water within their homes (84 %) and a flush toilet with a formal sewerage system (82 %).

Historically a fishing village, Doringbaai has a small vessel harbour (unproclaimed) and slipway to launch small craft or rubber boats, which is a public launch site and managed by the Matzikama Municipality. Once a major hub for industrial fishing and crayfish processing activities, this infrastructure has now been repurposed for tourism or aquaculture. There is a locally based Fisheries Compliance Office that serves Doringbaai, Ebenhaeser and Papendorp.⁴⁵

According to the Matzikama Municipality (2019), aquaculture and tourism have great potential in Doringbaai and could play an important role in mitigating unemployment caused by the decline of the fishing industry. In terms of tourism, the bay is best known for where Southern Right whales enter to calve from May to November, where they can be seen breaching and swimming with their calves in the protected waters. The hiking trails on both sides of the village allow good whale viewing opportunities. The lighthouse, built in 1963, is one of the prominent features of this coastal village and a world-renowned succulent nursery, where Namaqualand flowers can be accessed during late winter and early spring.⁴⁶ The Fryers Cove Winery has initiated repairs on the old jetty to improve the aesthetic appeal for tourists.

Involvement in fisheries

Due to the arid environment, the harvesting of marine resources has played an important role in sustaining local livelihoods for several generations. While the closure of major fishing industries by the mid-2000s in Doringbaai has drastically impacted the local community and resulted in people looking for employment in other towns, some continued to participate in the local small-scale fishing industry while others worked for smaller fishing companies (Stellenbosch University, 2013). The existence of several local fishing co-operatives in Doringbaai has been reported (Stellenbosch University, 2013), each with a dozen members, who share resources, equipment and profits to sustain their livelihoods. Traditionally, small-scale fishers make use of rowing boats and while the Interim Relief Programme in 2011 provided motorboats to this community, beneficiaries highlighted that high maintenance costs diminished income-earning potential. In addition, fishers reported to have limited access to markets for their catch and while some facilities were developed in the past to improve storage, a lack of skills left these opportunities underutilised (Stellenbosch University, 2013).

⁴⁵ See <https://www.dalrrd.gov.za/docs/media/APPLICATION%20CENTRES%202015-16%20FRAPWestern%20Cape%20and%20Northern%20Cape%20Final.pdf>

⁴⁶ See <https://showme.co.za/south-africa/western-cape/the-west-coast/doringbaai/doringbaai-cape-west-coast/>

Employment opportunities remain limited in Doringbaai and thus the Doringbaai Development Trust has been working to improve conditions. The Doring Bay Abalone Farm offers alternative marine-related employment for the local fishing community where direct marine extraction work is otherwise seasonal (i.e., lobster fishing) and dependent on limited quotas and permits. According to the Western Cape Registration and Verification Results rights holders list, there are 55 small-scale fishers registered in Doringbaai. Other active fishery sectors include abalone, large pelagics, net fish, traditional linefish, small (anchovy and sardine) pelagics, tuna pole, West Coast rock lobster (nearshore), West Coast rock lobster (offshore) and white mussel.

Doringbaai is also used as a recreational fishing area, where long stretches of beaches between Doringbaai and Strandfontein offer angling opportunities. Other recreational fishing activities include mussel collection and lobster fishing along the coast (licencing permitting).

Klawer

Location

The main place of Klawer is located on the banks of the Olifants River (31°47'S, 18°37'E), about 50 km inland from the West Coast in the Western Cape. The town falls under the jurisdiction of the Matzikama Local Municipality and West Coast District Municipality. Then name Klawer is derived from the Afrikaans word for a type of wild clover which grows locally after the rains. The town is located on the Cape/Namibia tourism route and was initially developed from a railway crossing between Cape Town and Bitterfontein, however, rail transport is not widely used today (Matzikama Municipality, 2019).

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Klawer had 1677 households and a population size of 6234 (972.33 per km²), where 51 % were female and 49 % male. The median age of the town was 27 years. Most of the population identified as coloured (75 %), followed by 14 % white and 9 % Black African. Most residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (89 %), followed by 5 % isiXhosa. For residents of the town, 5 % had received no schooling, 7 % had completed primary school and 13 % had completed their secondary education. The unemployment rate was 7 %, while youth (15 – 35-year-olds) unemployment was 14 %. Where employed, 19 % were formally employed, 8 % were informally employed and 72 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 15 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011).

Inventory of features

Klawer is predominately reliant on the agriculture sector and services industry that provide income for residents of the town. The infrastructure of the town is in good condition with access to basic services, including retail, business, administrative, municipal and education facilities. According to the Census 2011 data, most residents resided in formal housing (76 %), where 54 % owned their property without bond and 13 % with bond, 23 % lived in rentals and 8 % lived in rent-free housing. Most households had access to amenities such as refuse removal (98 %), sewerage (95 %), electricity (88 %), and piped water (70 %).

The town is surrounded by numerous farms that also serve as a drawcard for tourists to the area for agri-tours presented by the local Kapel farm (Matzikama Municipality, 2019). Klawer is best known for its wine cellar that was founded in 1956 and for its wildflower season, which attract many tourists to this famous section of the Cape Flower Route.

Involvement in fisheries

According to the fisher rights registration lists, there is one rights holder for net fish registered in Klawer. It is likely that the rights holder travels to the coast (the nearest location being Doringbaai at approximately 55 km away) to engage in fishing activities.

3.1.2. Cederberg Local Municipality

The main economic activities for the Cederberg Municipality include agriculture and fishing; institutional, community, social and personal services; and tourism and agri-processing. The biggest sectors in this local municipality are the agricultural and fishing sectors; however, both these sectors are in decline due to declining fish stocks in the fishing sector and decreasing permanent employment in the agricultural sector (Cederberg Municipality, 2020).

Clanwilliam

Location

The main place of Clanwilliam is located between the western slopes of the Cederberg mountains and the east bank of the Olifants River (31°47'S, 18°37'E), about 60 km inland from the West Coast in the Western Cape. The town falls under the jurisdiction of the Cederberg Local Municipality and West Coast District Municipality. The economic base for Clanwilliam is agriculture, and tourism is a growing component due to the natural beauty of the Cederberg Wilderness area, the Clanwilliam dam, wildflowers, the rock art at Boesmanskloof and various heritage resources. Rooibos tea and shoe making also form a central part of light industries in the town's economy (Cederberg Municipality, 2020).

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Clanwilliam had 2358 households and a population size of 7670 (502.71 per km²), where 52 % female and 48 % male. The median age in the town was 26 years. Most of the population identified as coloured (69 %), followed by 23 % Black African and 8% white. Most residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (78 %), followed by 12 % other languages and 8 % isiXhosa. For residents of the town, 14 % had completed their secondary education, 8 % had completed primary school, 5 % had received no schooling and 4 % had a higher education. The unemployment rate was 10 %, while youth (15 – 35-year-olds) unemployment was 19 %. Where employed, 26 % were formally employed, 4 % were informally employed and 66 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 61 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011).

Inventory of features

The town is the main administrative centre for the municipal district and serves as a service and commercial centre for surrounding areas. The infrastructure of the town is in good condition with access to basic services, including retail, business, administrative, municipal and education facilities. According to the Census 2011 data, most residents resided in formal housing (73 %), where 54 % owned their property without bond and 16 % with bond, 14 % lived in rentals and 12 % lived in rent-free housing. Most households had access to amenities such as sewerage (91 %), refuse removal (90 %), electricity (85 %), and piped water (69 %).

Involvement in fisheries

According to the fisher rights registration lists, one rights holder for abalone and seaweed and one holder for West Coast rock lobster (offshore) are registered in Clanwilliam. It is likely that the rights holders travel to the coast (the nearest location being Lamberts Bay at approximately 65 km away) to engage in fishing activities.

Lamberts Bay

Location

The main place of Lamberts Bay is located on the West Coast in the Western Cape (32°5'S, 18°18'E), under the jurisdiction of the Cederberg Local Municipality and West Coast District Municipality. A traditional fishing community of the West Coast, the building of a processing factory for lobster canning, fishmeal and later repurposed for potato chips were key developments for the town's present-day economic base. Furthermore, the town is also a popular tourist destination due to its coastline and Bird Island (Cederberg Municipality, 2020). The harbour is naturally protected by Bird Island.

Lamberts Bay, originally known as Otterdam, was proclaimed in 1913 and named after a former British admiral (Sir Robert Lambert) (DAFF, 2015). While starting as a farming town, Lamberts Bay moved into fishing due to the snoek run that occurred annually along its shores, following the abundant anchovy on which they forage (Rogerson, 2011). The first lobster canning factory was erected in 1918, signalling the start of the development of the village into a company fishing town (DAFF, 2015). Breakwaters were first constructed between 1937 and 1940, where Bird Island was joined to the mainland by a breakwater in 1959 to protect the fishing fleet in the harbour, and the breakwater were further extended in 1985 (DAFF, 2015).

Originally known as Lamberts Bay Canning Company when it was incorporated in 1918, the company established a factory based in Lamberts Bay, starting with lobster canning and subsequently moved into producing fishmeal and other fish products. The Lamberts Bay Canning Company evolved into the Oceana Group over time; however, the fish factory closed in the early 2000s after a southerly shift by the fish where the industry and pelagic fleet followed the fish, and production continues at Oceana's factory in St Helena Bay (Rogerson, 2011). The factory in Lamberts Bay was converted into a potato processing facility (producing, e.g., French fries). Since the late 1990s, the harbour has also been used by the diamond dredging industry as Lamberts Bay is located on the southern fringe of the diamond-diving areas concentrated in the Northern Cape (Norton, 2014).

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Lamberts Bay had 1710 households and a population size of 6120 (133.83 per km²), where 51 % were female and 49 % male. The median age in Lamberts Bay was 31 years. Most of the population identified as coloured (75 %), followed by 16 % white and 9 % Black African. Most residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (91 %), followed by 6 % isiXhosa.

Lamberts Bay has schooling facilities, although children tend to attend high school elsewhere if their families are able to afford the transport costs. In poorer families with only one regular income, there was a higher chance for teenagers to not complete their schooling past primary level (Norton, 2014). For residents in Lamberts Bay, 2 % had received no schooling, 7 % had completed primary school, 17 % had completed their secondary education and 5 % have received tertiary education (StatsSA, 2011). Nthane (2015) highlighted an education problem within the formally disadvantaged coloured small-scale fisher community of Lamberts Bay, where significant numbers of surveyed fishers did not proceed past primary school (up to 50 %), in line with the StatsSA records.

Most work opportunities in Lamberts Bay are in the potato processing factory, or as domestic labour in the wealthier areas of town (including holiday accommodation). Limited opportunities in the village result in men moving away to seek better employment opportunities, leaving the women behind to raise the families (Norton, 2014). Approximately 37 % of households were female-headed in 2011, similar to the provincial average of 38 % in 2019. According to the Census 2011 data, the unemployment rate was 10 %, while youth (15 – 35-year-olds) unemployment was 19 %. Where employed, 24 % were formally employed and 71 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 53 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011).

Inventory of features

Infrastructure and service provision are in fair condition, where the town has a number of supermarkets, restaurants (including specialised menus tailored to the tourists' West Coast seafood experience), liquor stores, a clinic and community health centre, pharmacies, post office, traffic and law enforcement branch, municipal library and school facilities. The town also caters heavily to tourism, with a number of seaside accommodation options available (including a caravan park), harbour boat and kayak cruises, a dedicated tourism bureau and the Sandveld Museum, which includes historical accounts of the fishing industry and fishing community in Lamberts Bay.⁴⁷ The main access roads leading to the town from the

⁴⁷ See <https://www.lambertsbay.co.za>

highway are tarred. The Western Cape is considered to be a water stressed region, particularly along the West Coast region (South African Government, 2021), and plans for a desalination plant in Lamberts Bay have been submitted by the Cederberg Municipality in 2020.

The Lamberts Bay community is spatially divided between the wealthier population residing on the seaside and the poorer (largely fishing) community living in the settlement section. The wealthier area consists of suburban homes, holiday accommodation, formal businesses and municipal facilities. The poorer area has a mix of older cottages, RDP housing and informal dwellings and businesses. According to the 2011 Census, most residents resided in formal housing (89 %), where 53 % owned their property with no bond and 12 % with bond, 24 % lived in rentals and 9 % lived in rent-free housing. All residents had access to weekly refuse removal services. Most residents had access to electricity (98 %), weekly refuse removal services (96 %), a flush toilet with a formal sewerage system (91 %) and piped water within their homes (88 %).

Referred to as the “diamond” of the West Coast due to its attractive white beaches, Lamberts Bay is known as the crayfish (i.e., rock lobster) hotspot of South Africa.⁴⁸ While the fishing industry has declined sharply within this town and region, Lamberts Bay has evolved into a tourist attraction, showcasing a traditional West Coast seaside experience, with the Lamberts Bay Crayfish Festival being held annually in the town. The harbour is located next to a long stretch of white sand beach and therefore receives relatively large numbers of visitors during the holiday season. Lamberts Bay has served as a lifeguard beach, rescue base and Pink Rescue Buoy placement for the National Sea Rescue Institute (NSRI) (NSRI, 2020).⁴⁹ Aside from Lamberts Bay Boat Charters, harbour tourism was exclusively land-based with Bird Island being the primary attraction (DAFF, 2015).

The harbour at Lamberts Bay houses a Fisheries Compliance Office that services the harbour as well as the surrounding areas.⁵⁰ As a proclaimed harbour in South Africa, Lamberts Bay harbour has a harbour master and the following features (DAFF, 2015):

- A lead-in jetty (a 32 m long reinforced concrete deck on piles structure)
- Quay 1 (a 140 m mass concrete gravity block wall)
- Quay 2 (a 50 m by 20m long precast gravity block wall)
- Quay 3 (a 38 m long precast block wall with anchor bars)
- Coaster berth (quay 4) (a 55m long timber deck on timber piles quay)
- Boat ramp (10 m wide concrete paved boat ramp)
- Slipway (a 120 tonne slipway with a side-slip bay on each side of it)
- Derrick Crane (7.5 tonne derrick with manual slewing and fixed luffing)

Involvement in fisheries

Fishing is deeply rooted in the history of the town, where marine resource harvesting was historically carried out by coloured and European fishers for the local market (before the industrial fishing era) (Nthane, 2015). In contrast to the past, Lamberts Bay harbour now only houses a limited number of small fishing vessels and fishing activities centre around linefish, West Coast rock lobster and limited quantities of pelagic species and hake. Snoek is the mainstay of the existing linefishing activity in Lamberts Bay and this stock is considered to be optimally exploited. West Coast Rock lobster historically played a vital role in the fishing industry of Lamberts Bay, particularly with the establishment of the lobster canning factory in 1918. However, heavy commercial exploitation in the

⁴⁸ See <https://www.lambertsbay.co.za>

⁴⁹ The NSRI or Sea Rescue is a registered non-profit organisation that focuses on drowning prevention and saving lives. It is a charity staffed by volunteers and stationed at rescue bases and lifeguard stations along the coast on beaches (and on inland dams). The NSRI uses preventative measures such as emergency signage, Pink Rescue Buoys for emergency floatation, rescue swimmers, lifeguards and active patrols during peak seasons (NSRI, 2020).

⁵⁰ See <https://www.dalrrd.gov.za/docs/media/APPLICATION%20CENTRES%202015-16%20FRAPWestern%20Cape%20and%20Northern%20Cape%20Final.pdf>

1950s and 1960s resulted in the lobster population to decrease substantially to just 2 % of its historical abundance.

Both recreational and commercial lobster fisheries are still active at the harbour, with approximately 30 commercial lobster vessels based at Lamberts Bay Harbour (DAFF, 2015). Small-scale fishers make use of *bakkies*, which are typically small, two-people boats running on a motor or being rowed. Subsistence fishing remains a key feature in this community due to the socio-economic profile of the region. In the traditional fishing community of the town, many fishers operating today are third-generation fishers from the coloured community (ABALOB, 2020), while others have entered the fishery sector by leaving school in their mid-teens in search of employment (Nthane, 2015). Other smaller fisher groups residing in Lamberts Bay include the white small-scale fishers who live mainly in the historically white areas of the town, and the Black African fishers who reside in Kampong – a small informal settlement adjacent to the historical coloured area (Nthane, 2015).

With the decline of marine stocks, the implementation of strict quota systems and removal of the fishing industry from Lamberts Bay to St Helena Bay, the traditional fishing community has struggled to make a living in the area (ABALOB, 2020). Furthermore, other issues have been noted in the fishing community such as ill health, where many poorer fishing families are ill but do not have the money to seek medical attention (Rogerson, 2011). Over the last few decades, poaching has become increasingly common and as a high-value commodity, lobster is now primarily over-harvested due to IUU fishing practices (ABALOB, 2020).

Local fishing committees and co-operatives are present in the town, where membership sought to provide additional support to fishers, particularly when dealing with policy (i.e., fishing rights allocation) and serving the interests of fishers involved in specific sectors (Nthane, 2015). From the 2000s, some fishers organised themselves into cooperatives formed by the Department of Trade and Industry through the Cooperatives Incentives Scheme, where allocations were pooled. One cooperative called the Coastal Fellas Cooperative received funding and vessels through this incentives scheme. Another cooperative called Fish Tails was involved in the processing of products (George, 2019). These cooperatives worked together where the pre-harvest Coastal Fellas Cooperative created jobs for the post-harvest Fish Tails Cooperative by selling line fish to be cleaned, salted or smoked (to then be sold on to market). However, these co-operatives were found to have operational and trust issues within the community by Nthane (2015).

Within the lobster sector, IUU activities have extended to more organised crime syndicates, bribing the youth from the fishing communities to take part in illegal lobster harvesting activities in exchange for drugs (ABALOB, 2020). Small-scale fishers are particularly vulnerable due to pricing negotiations with middlemen that often allow their lobster allocation quota of the season to be purchased well below market value. Where 98 % of South Africa's reported West Coast rock lobster catch is exported and small-scale fishers also only receive 23 % of the TAC (2019/2020) for commercial fishing, these vulnerabilities are further deepened within the traditional fishing community of Lamberts Bay (ABALOB, 2020). Some initiatives, such as ABALOB's *Coding for Crayfish*, have been piloted in these communities to link small-scale fishers directly to the market via technology applications. This pilot is an attempt to improve livelihoods, promote sustainable fishing practices via monitoring and enhance accountability and transparency in this fishery and along the supply chain (including a cold chain) (ABALOB, 2020).

Despite the diminishing industrial fishing sector in this town, the local fishing profile for commercial exploitation remains high, with rights allocation for abalone, hake longline, large pelagics, net fish, small pelagics (both anchovy and sardine, as well as sardine only), traditional linefish, tuna pole, West Coast rock lobster (nearshore), West Coast rock lobster (offshore), white mussel and a fish processing establishment.

Elands Bay

Location

The main place of Elands Bay is located in a remote area along the West Coast in the Western Cape (32°18'S, 18°19'E), under the jurisdiction of the Cederberg Local Municipality and West Coast District Municipality. The fishing industry forms the main economic base for the town; however, it has been in decline over time due to quota limitations on fishing that has restricted this economic activity in the local community. Other important economic activities include agriculture, specifically potato farming. The town has also become an increasingly popular surfing venue internationally, thus also drawing in tourists through the sport (Cederberg Municipality, 2020).

While the original settlement was based on farming, today Elands Bay can be described as a typical fishing company town, where the current village revolves around work available at the three lobster factories (Isaacs and Hara, 2008). The lobster factories located at Baboon Point (on the south side of the town) were established in the 1950s, where as demand for the high-value resource increased, so did the additional labour until the mid-1990s. As a result, migrant labourers were brought in from other provinces on a seasonal basis, where they were housed in a compound at Baboon Point up to 1996.

The area is important due to scientific value of archaeological and palaeontological site located at Baboon Point that contribute to a wider understanding of southern African indigenous cultural history (including shell middens), local past environment and identification of original animal populations and their changes through time (SAHRIS, 2009). Declared a Provincial Heritage Site in 2009, this site in Elands Bay also contains the compound used to house migrant labourers serving the local fishing industry, characterising social developments in South Africa because of the apartheid (SAHRIS, 2009).

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Elands Bay had 446 households and a population size of 1525 (405.22 per km²), where 51 % were male and 49 % female. The median age in Elands Bay was 28 years. Most of the population identified as coloured (60 %), followed by 31 % Black African and 8 % white. Most residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (75 %), followed by 17 % isiXhosa and 4 % English.

As noted by Isaacs and Hara (2008), the social disadvantages in the Elands Bay community are characterised by structural poverty – in line with many fishing communities of the Western Cape. Social ills include alcohol and drug abuse, chronic unemployment, high-school drop-outs, domestic abuse, single parenting and teenage pregnancies. Health issues are also prevalent in the community, where Tuberculosis (TB), Foetal Alcohol Spectrum Disorder (FASD)⁵¹ and human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)/acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) are common occurrences problems. Due to these issues, the illiteracy rate in the disadvantaged section of the community is high and many individuals have to leave in order to find better education and employment opportunities. As there is only a primary school in Elands Bay, parents are required to send their children to high schools in better serviced urban areas, such as Picketberg. Many families cannot afford transport and school fees, resulting in high drop-out rates (Isaacs and Hara, 2008). For residents in Elands Bay, 8 % had received no schooling, 10 % had completed primary school and 10 % had completed their secondary education (StatsSA, 2011).

The main sources of income for the town include fishing, farming, government coast-care programmes and tourism. While the fishing and farming industries provide some permanent employment, most of these opportunities are seasonal. The women mainly work on potato farms or as packers in the lobster factories (Isaacs and Hara, 2008). According to the Census 2011 data, the unemployment rate was 15 %, while youth (15 – 35-year-olds) unemployment was 29 %. Where employed, 17 % were formally employed and 81 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 76 % of

⁵¹ FASD is typically the result of the *tot* or *dop* system that originated in the era when South African slaves were paid with alcohol and minimum cash, which was later applied to fishing and farming communities. In some Elands Bay families, FASD is intergenerational (Isaacs and Hara, 2008).

households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011). Notably, 64 % of households with a head of 64 years old or less lived under the UBPL and 12 % of households with a head of 65 years old or more lived below the UBPL. This indicated that poverty levels in households with younger breadwinners were high, particularly as the median age of the household head was 49 years old.

Inventory of features

Elands Bay is a fairly isolated and rural town, which functions as a low order service centre and holiday destination, which has basic goods and services available for local residents (Cederberg Municipality, 2020). Elands Bay offers basic services such as a health care unit, police station, post office, shops (including spaza shops⁵² and shebeens⁵³ in poorer areas), a municipal library and schooling facilities – where residents travel to larger centres such as Piketberg (100 km away) for banking, higher education facilities and larger retail services. Due to the aesthetic beaches, popular surfing spots, Verlorenvlei (a coastal freshwater lake) and Baboon Point, the town caters for tourism through numerous accommodation options (a hotel, guest houses, bed and breakfasts, self-catering units, a caravan park and camping facilities) and restaurants, which showcase local West Coast seafood options.⁵⁴

The housing pattern in Elands Bay was historically structured according to company lines, where one area was designated for Engelbrecht Handelsmaatskappy (English name: Cape Lobster Exporters Association Engelbrecht), another area for Elandia and one for Daseeda. Today, many households have been given RDP houses (Isaacs and Hara, 2008). The Elands Bay community is therefore spatially divided between the wealthier population residing on the seaside⁵⁵ and the poorer community living in the settlement section⁵⁶ (about 1 km inland). The wealthier area consists of suburban homes, holiday accommodation, formal businesses and municipal facilities. The poorer area has a mix of RDP housing and informal dwellings and businesses. According to Census 2011 data, most residents resided in formal housing (97 %), where 33 % owned their property (no bond), 24 % lived in rent-free housing and 30 % lived in rentals. Most residents had access to electricity (97 %), a flush toilet with a formal sewerage system (95 %), weekly refuse removal services (93 %), and piped water within their homes (81 %).

Other than loading dock facilities of the lobster factories, there is limited built infrastructure on the coast/beach. There is a public launch site at the Old Crayfish Factory that is managed by the Cederberg Municipality. Baboon Point is the preferred fishing spot in Elands Bay and lobster season is very popular amongst tourists visiting the area for recreational fishing activities.⁵⁷ The bay is a prime whale and dolphin viewing point between July and September when migrating Southern Right whales and Heaviside Dolphins can be seen in large numbers.⁵⁸ Due to the popularity of surfing and other tourism- and fishing-related activities, the beach at Elands Bay is a lifeguard post for NSRI (NSRI, 2020).

Involvement in fisheries

The modern fishing economy at Elands Bay is based primarily on linefishing and lobster catches. According to the Western Cape Registration and Verification Results rights holders list, there are 92 small-scale fishers registered in Elands Bay. Other active fishery sectors include hake longline, large pelagics, net fish, traditional linefish, West Coast rock lobster (nearshore), West Coast rock lobster (offshore) and white mussel. Fishery compliance inspectors operate in the bay area.

⁵² An informal convenience shop business usually run from home typically to supplement household incomes of the owners.

⁵³ A drinking place in an informal settlement or township.

⁵⁴ See www.west-coast-info.co.za

⁵⁵ Small Area 1610054 from Census 2011 shows that the majority (82 %) of residents in the wealthier/seaside area are white, illustrating how historic segregation patterns persist.

⁵⁶ Small Area 1610009 from Census 2011 shows that most residents in the settlement areas are non-white, where 64 % are coloured and 33 % are Black African, illustrating how historic segregation patterns persist.

⁵⁷ See travel-information.org

⁵⁸ See <https://www.sahistory.org.za>

Fishers in Elands Bay are typically described as those who have formal rights to fish, those linked to fishing companies and those using recreational permits. Fishing corporations, such as S. A. Commercial Fisherman's Corp. were active in Elands Bay from the late 1990s, as the new fishing quota system was established after independence (Lewthwaite, 1999). Fishers who were unsuccessful with long-term fishing rights applications sometimes use recreational permits fish and sell their excess catch (i.e., what is not needed in subsistence for their families), which is not legally allowed. IUU fishing activities also increased when many fishers were not successful in securing long-term fishing rights and involve all three types of fishers (Isaacs and Hara, 2008). Many fishers typically subsidise their livelihoods by switching between fishing and alternative (temporary) activities such as farm, construction and tourism-related work.

Aside from the overall decline in industrial fisheries along the West Coast due to environmental and anthropogenic drivers (see Section 1.3.1), other reoccurring challenges faced by these coastal communities include harmful algal blooms (referred to as red tides) that cause marine species wash out. While environmentally damaging as red tides can lead to mass mortalities of entire communities of marine organisms, and/or mass walkouts of lobsters, this also has knock-on effects for coastal communities. Fisheries and aquaculture industries are vulnerable due to the loss of marine resources caused by red tides, and poor water quality and bad odours associated with these events affect coastal tourism. In Elands Bay, key examples include the walkouts of hundreds of tons of rock lobsters in 1997 and 2000 (Grobler, 2021).

3.1.3. Bergrivier Local Municipality

In 2017, the local economy in the Bergrivier Municipal Area was dominated by the agriculture, forestry and fishing sector (contributing 28.8 %), followed by manufacturing (contributing 22.7 %), wholesale and retail trade, catering and accommodation (contributing 12.9 %) and finance, insurance, real estate and business services (contributing 10.0 %) (Bergrivier Municipality, 2020). Low-skilled workers are mainly concentrated in the agriculture, forestry and fishing sector, accounting for 75.5 % the sector's total employment. Export revenue is largely driven mainly by the fishing sector, where exports of fish and crustaceans, molluscs and other aquatic invertebrates accounted for 68.2 % of the local municipality's total export revenue in 2019. Spain was the main export destination for exports from the fishing sector, accounting for 88.4 % of export revenue (Bergrivier Municipality, 2020).

Redelinghuys

Location

The main place of Redelinghuys is located on the Verlorenvlei River in the Western Cape (32°28'44"S, 18°32'17"E), about 20 km inland on the West Coast, under the jurisdiction of the Bergrivier Local Municipality and West Coast District Municipality. Classified as an isolated village, the town mainly functions as a residential area for the surrounding agricultural sector and retired people. Redelinghuys has no autonomous economic base other than accommodation of farm workers who work on neighbouring farms and basic service provision associated with this use (Bergrivier Municipality, 2020). According to the Bergrivier Municipality (2019), there are recreational and tourism opportunities associated with the Verlorenvlei, declared a Ramsar Site due to natural and cultural significance, which is located between Redelinghuys and Elands Bay.

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Redelinghuys had 138 households and a population size of 574 (270.43 per km²), where 52 % were female and 48 % male. The median age in the town was 26 years. Most of the population identified coloured (58 %), followed by 23 % Black African and 17% white. Most residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (96 %). For residents of the town, 11 % had completed their secondary education, 11 % had completed primary school and 4 % had received no schooling. The unemployment rate was 5 %, while youth (15 – 35-year-olds) unemployment was 10 %. Where employed, 19 % were formally employed, 4 % were informally employed and 74 % were retired

(or of unknown employment status). Approximately 57 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011).

Inventory of features

Infrastructure is in good condition and basic services are available, including a police station, a public library, a satellite health clinic, and access to primary schooling. According to the Census 2011 data, most residents resided in formal housing (94 %), where 46 % owned their property without bond and 1 % with bond, 12 % lived in rentals and 9 % lived in rent-free housing. Most households had access to amenities such as refuse removal (98 %), electricity (98 %), piped water (89 %) and sewerage (83 %).

Redelinghuys has a variety of accommodation options available from guest houses, bed and breakfasts to self-catering units, drawing tourists in for the flower season and to visit Verlorenvlei, as well as the surrounding coastal area.

Involvement in fisheries

According to the fisher rights registration lists, one West Coast rock lobster (nearshore) rights holder is registered in Redelinghuys. It is likely that the holder travels to the coast (the nearest location being Elands Bay at approximately 30 km away) to engage in fishing activities. On the southern shore of the Verlorenvlei,⁵⁹ a provincial heritage site is linked to the vernacular fishing village that operated there in the late 18th century.

Aurora

Location

The main place of Aurora is located approximately 35 km inland from the West Coast in the Western Cape (32°42'S, 18°29'E), under the jurisdiction of the Bergrivier Local Municipality and West Coast District Municipality. Aurora was established in 1906 and was named after the Roman goddess of dawn.⁶⁰ Classified as an isolated village, the town provides basic services for the surrounding agricultural community, including accommodation for farm workers (Bergrivier Municipality, 2020).

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Aurora had 201 households and a population size of 578 (355.54 per km²), where 54 % were female and 46 % male. The town had a median age of 34 years. Most of the population identified as coloured (67 %), followed by 31 % white and 1 % Black African. Most residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (92 %), followed by 6 % English. For residents of the town, 13 % had completed their secondary education, 9 % had completed primary school, 2 % had received no schooling and 10 % had a higher education. The unemployment rate was 5 %, while youth (15 – 35-year-olds) unemployment was 8 %. Where employed, 20 % were formally employed, 2 % were informally employed, 6 % were employed in a private household and 73 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 55 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011).

Inventory of features

The infrastructure in the town is good condition, with access to basic services. More tourist accommodation and restaurant options have become available over the years due to local tourism interest.⁶¹ According to the Census 2011 data, most residents resided in formal housing (94 %), where 69 % owned their property without bond and 4 % with bond, 17 % lived in rentals and 7 % lived in rent-free housing. Most households had access to amenities such as electricity (98 %), piped water (97 %), sewerage (96 %) and refuse removal (94 %).

⁵⁹ A term used predominantly in South Africa referring to a shallow lake.

⁶⁰ See <https://www.westcoastway.co.za>

⁶¹ See www.west-coast-info.co.za

Involvement in fisheries

According to the fisher rights registration lists, there is one rights holder for traditional linefish is registered in Aurora. It is likely that the rights holder travels to the coast (the nearest location being Velddrif at approximately 40 km away) to engage in fishing activities.

Dwarskersbos

Location

The main place of Dwarskersbos is located on the West Coast in the Western Cape (32°42'S, 18°14'E), under the jurisdiction of the Bergrivier Local Municipality and West Coast District Municipality. In the 1960s, Dwarskersbos was mainly an informal fishing community and a holiday resort for the inland farmers that was located on private land. Today, this coastal town characterised by its property market, holiday accommodation and tourism. The main function of Dwarskersbos is to provide holiday accommodation, where tourism, retirees and second home residents are the primary economic contributors (Bergrivier Municipality, 2020).

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Dwarskersbos had 211 households and a population size of 670 (437.23 per km²), where 52 % were female and 48 % male. The median age in Dwarskersbos was 47 years, where a large portion of the population was above 65 years (22 %). Most of the population identified as white (58 %), followed by 30 % Black African and 10 % coloured. Most residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (95 %), followed by 4 % English. For residents of the town, 23 % had completed their secondary education and 17 % had attained a higher education degree. The unemployment rate in 2011 was negligible (less than 1 %). Where employed, 14 % were formally employed, 1 % were informally employed, 2 % were employed in a private household and 83 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 41 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011).

Inventory of features

Dwarskersbos offers basic services largely catering for the tourism industry – where residents travel to larger centres such as Velddrif (10 km away) for banking, education facilities and larger retail services. There is only a primary school in Dwarskersbos. According to the Census 2011 data, all residents resided in formal housing, where 62 % owned their property with no bond and 10 % with a bond, 17 % lived in rentals and 5 % lived in rent-free housing. All residents had access to electricity, a flush toilet with a formal sewerage system and piped water within their homes. Most had access to weekly refuse removal services (96 %).

Due to the aesthetic beaches and popular for water sports, the town has many accommodation options including a caravan park, seaside bungalows and self-catering flats. There are also restaurant, café and pub options that serve seafood.⁶² This area is renowned for whale and dolphin watching.⁶³

Involvement in fisheries

According to the fisher rights registration lists, there are three rights holders for net fish registered in Dwarskersbos. Northern Dwarskersbos is a public launch site for small vessels, which is maintained by the Cederberg Municipality. The town is also a very popular destination for recreational fishers, where the beach stretches from Velddrif and Dwarskersbos to Elands Bay.

Porterville

Location

The main place of Porterville is located at the foot of the Olifants River Mountains (33°00'S, 18°59'E), approximately 100 km inland from the West Coast in the Western Cape. The town falls under the

⁶² See www.west-coast-info.co.za

⁶³ See www.westcoastway.co.za

jurisdiction of the Bergrivier Local Municipality and West Coast District Municipality. Established in 1863, the town was named after William Porter (an Attorney General of the Cape Colony). The primary economic base is agriculture that is supplemented by recreational and tourism activities.

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Porterville had 1944 households and a population size of 7049 (884.31 per km²), with 52 % female and 48 % male. The town had a median age of 30 years. Most of the population identified as coloured (77 %), followed by 21 % white and 2 % Black African. Most residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (96 %), followed by 2 % English and 2 % other languages. For residents of the town, 5 % had received no schooling, 7 % had completed primary school, 17 % had completed their secondary education and 6 % had a higher education. The unemployment rate was 3 %, while youth (15 – 35-year-olds) unemployment was 8 %. Where employed, 28 % were formally employed, 1 % were informally employed, 5 % were employed in private households and 66 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 42 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011).

Inventory of features

Porterville is a central place with sound infrastructure and good service provisions, contributing towards the establishment of a regional Kaap Agri Office (Bergrivier Municipality, 2020). According to the Census 2011 data, most residents resided in formal housing (93 %), where 44 % owned their property without bond and 11 % with bond, 27 % lived in rentals and 3 % lived in rent-free housing. Most households had access to amenities such as refuse removal (99 %), electricity (97 %), sewerage (97 %) and piped water (88 %).

Involvement in fisheries

According to the fisher rights registration lists, there is one rights holder for a fish processing establishment. It is likely that the establishment is located along the coast. The nearest industrial fishing hub is St Helena Bay, approximately 120 km away.

Velddrif

Location

The main place of Velddrif is located on the estuary where the Berg River flows into St. Helena Bay on the West Coast in the Western Cape (32°47'S, 18°10'E), under the jurisdiction of the Bergrivier Local Municipality and West Coast District Municipality. Velddrif is a coastal town that is a focal point for the fishing industry along the West Coast, where fishing is a key economic activity (Bergrivier Municipality, 2020). Important natural resources for these communities include the sea, coastal environment and salt pans, while the Bergrivier Estuary Tourism, retirees and second home residents also provide a solid base for the local economy (Bergrivier Municipality, 2020). The main industries of Velddrif are therefore fishing, tourism and salt production – there are two large salt works in the town. For our communities of interest, sub place Laaiplek hosts the mechanized components of the fishing industry and central business district, while sub place Noordhoek is a detached residential settlement with a mix of smaller houses, RDP housing and informal structures (Southworth et al., 2014).

The origins of the fishing communities at the Berg River mouth started in 1819 when a fish house was erected at Laaiplek so that fishing boats could land their catch and fish were cleaned and salted in barrels. Snoek and harders were also salted and dried (Southworth et al., 2014). Laaiplek was developed in 1860 when ground at the river mouth was turned into a quay, where produce and fish were loaded onto ships for markets in Cape Town, which is where its name is derived from (meaning *loading place* in Afrikaans).⁶⁴ Laaiplek is best known for the establishment of a fish factory in the 1940s, which developed into an industrial fishing hub that included the fish meal factory and canning factories after the Second World War (Southworth et al., 2014). The river mouth was subsequently re-positioned and

⁶⁴ See <http://www.Bokkom.co.za>

formalized in the 1970s by the construction of two breakwaters about 1000 metres to the east of the old mouth (DAFF, 2015).

The town is known as the *Bokkomhoofstad* (or the capital of Bokkoms) of South Africa due to a series of small individual factories found along the river that produce 95 % of the country's *bokkoms*. Situated close to the Laaiplek harbour, *Bokkomlaan*, is the base for the traditional small-scale net fishing activities. Some of the bokkom factories are national monuments and are primary livelihoods for local fishers. This famous local industry originated in Velddrif due to ideal weather conditions, access to the coast and estuary, as well as salt pans (Southworth et al., 2014). While past fishing practices included fishers netting fish in the river using their *bakkies* (small boats), gillnet fishing in the estuary was banned in 2003 and fishers now set their nets in the open sea off Laaiplek (DAFF, 2015).

Demographic attributes

For each community of interest within Velddrif, the Census 2011 data was as follows:

		Laaiplek	Noordhoek
General	Total Estimated Population (count)	579	7135
	Population Density (count per km²)	301.93	2497.23
	Number of Households (count)	255	2058
	Males (%)	47%	49%
	Females (%)	53%	51%
	Female Headed Households (%)	27%	41%
Population Age	Median Age (years)	46	26
	Under 5 years (%)	3%	10%
	65 years and older (%)	22%	4%
Population Group	Black African (%)	1%	16%
	Coloured (%)	10%	82%
	Indian/Asian (%)	0%	1%
	White (%)	89%	1%
	Other (%)	0%	1%
First Language	Afrikaans (%)	90%	83%
	English (%)	8%	2%
	IsiXhosa (%)	1%	13%
	Other (%)	2%	2%
Employment Status	Unemployment Rate (%)	3%	10%
	Youth Unemployment Rate (between 15 and 35 years old) (%)	7%	18%
	Formally Employed (%)	24%	22%
	Informally Employed (%)	7%	6%

		Laaiplek	Noordhoek
	Private household (%)	1%	5%
	Retired/unknown (%)	68%	67%
Families living below UBPL (Poverty Status)	Annual Household Income that is equal to or less than the UBPL (%)	41%	62%
	Head of Household 64 years and younger (%)	21%	56%
	Head of Household 65 years and older (%)	20%	6%
Level of Education	No Schooling (%)	1%	5%
	Completed Primary School (%)	3%	9%
	Completed Secondary School (%)	41%	12%
	Higher (%)	10%	2%

Like other smaller coastal towns on the West Coast, the shrinking fishing industry has resulted in high levels of unemployment due to limited economic diversity and opportunity – this is particularly evident in Noordhoek. Similar to Doringbaai, the predominately coloured settlement of Noordhoek had 41 % of households that were female headed in 2011, which is above the Western Cape average of 37.6 % (Galal, 2021). Men usually move away to look for work opportunities, leaving the women behind to raise families as essentially single-parent households.

Inventory of features

A distinctive ambience and coastal atmosphere of the West Coast, Velddrif is dominated by the setting of the river, fishing and harbour activities, boats and factory buildings as well as the defining coastline. The main fish industry activities occur at the Laaiplek harbour, Pelican harbour and *Bokkomlaan* due to their historical value (Southworth et al., 2014). Infrastructure and service provision are in fair condition, where the town has a number of supermarkets, specialty stores (including marine hardware supplies⁶⁵) restaurants (including specialised menus tailored for the West Coast seafood experience), liquor stores, health facilities, post office, traffic and law enforcement branch, municipal library and school facilities. The town is a popular tourist destination, mainly for its wildlife (particularly birding), fishing, yachting and art galleries. There are numerous accommodation options ranging from hotels, guest houses, Bed and Breakfast establishments, self-catering units to a caravan park.⁶⁶ The general visitor profile is similar to that of Lamberts Bay where most South African tourists visiting over the summer holidays (i.e., during December). Given the significance of fisheries in the town's history and subsequent development, Laaiplek is home to the South African Sea Fisheries Museum.⁶⁷

Spatially, the communities of interest are divided due to tracks of vacant land. Laaiplek, located on the Berg River, resembles a combination of built-up areas (residential, tourist and formal businesses) and underutilised open spaces where the river interface is dominated by private development. The peripheral neighbourhood of Noordhoek mainly serves as a residential area (with some spaza shops and other informal businesses) has a degrading urban character as most of its residents are poorer. Due to the original maritime trading and artisanal fishing activities, the town has a distinctive West Coast fishing village character as evident from old fisher cottages along the river. However, the coastline is characterised by vacant or underutilised harbour and sea front developments (Southworth et al., 2014). The features for each community of interest in terms of housing and services in 2011 is detailed below (Census 2011):

⁶⁵ For example, Eigelaar Marine Store Laaiplek

⁶⁶ See www.westcoastway.co.za

⁶⁷ See <http://www.safisheriesmuseum.co.za>

		Laaiplek	Noordhoek
Type of Dwelling	Formal (%)	100%	88%
	Informal/other (%)	0%	12%
Tenure Status	Owned and fully paid off (%)	47%	61%
	Owned but not yet paid off (%)	11%	7%
	Rented (%)	38%	19%
	Occupied rent-free (%)	3%	11%
Access to Amenities	Flush toilet connected to sewage and septic tank (%)	100%	89%
	Weekly refuse removal (%)	100%	100%
	Piped water inside dwelling (%)	99%	82%
	Electricity for lighting (%)	100%	96%

With the fishing industry developing in Velddrif since the 1800s, this has played an important role in defining the identity and character of this area. A mix of industrial and traditional fisheries, this can be viewed as a typical West Coast coastal town. The fishing industry, operating from Laaiplek (where many fishers live in both Laaiplek and Noordhoek communities), includes small linefishing boats and large trawlers of up to 36 meters in length (DAFF, 2015). A proclaimed harbour, Laaiplek was the site of the first fishing factory and today there is still evidence of the fish canning and fish factory activities, where the industry centres around small pelagics and, to a limited extent, lobster. There is also a public launch site at Rooibaaai in Laaiplek, which is managed by the Bergrivier Municipality. Fishery compliance inspectors operate in the area.

The proclaimed harbour in Laaiplek has a harbour master and the following marine support services and activities (DAFF, 2015):

- East breakwater (a 162 m long concrete sheet piled structure)
- East training wall (a 234 m long concrete sheet pile wall)
- West breakwater (a 238 m long concrete sheet pile wall)
- West training wall (a 135 m long concrete sheet pile wall)
- Offloading (or government) quay (a 340 m long timber deck on timber piles structure used for servicing trawlers)

Recreational fishing is also a popular drawcard for tourists to visit Velddrif and there is a seasonal recreational fishing demand on the harbour. Boat trips and river tours operate around the Port Owen Marina and the Port Owen Yacht Club has a busy and varied calendar, including regattas and land-based social meetings (DAFF, 2015). The area is also popular for fish tournaments that take place annually. Shore-based recreational fishing activities take place at the breakwater of Laaiplek and recreational fishers also fish from jetties running along the estuary.⁶⁸

Involvement in fisheries

There are 28 small-scale fishers registered in Velddrif (Laaiplek) according to fisher rights registration lists. Other active fishing licenses in Velddrif include hake inshore trawl (hake and sole, fished on the south coast⁶⁹), net fish, small pelagics (anchovy and sardine), West Coast rock lobster (nearshore), West Coast rock lobster (offshore) and white mussel.

⁶⁸ See <http://www.Bokkom.co.za>

⁶⁹ See <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fsr162>

Velddrif is famous for the West Coast delicacy *bokkoms* (dried fish), originating from artisanal fishers and is an established traditional fishery capital along the West Coast. The main target species for the small-scale net fishery are harders, which are dried out to make *bokkoms* (DAFF, 2015). The Bokkom Festival takes place annually during February at Velddrif. However, similar to other small-scale fishing communities in coastal towns such as Lamberts Bay, small-scale fishers face numerous challenges. For example, these communities have raised concern that middlemen use the small-scale fishers catch to market and sell at large profits, while originally only paying the fishers a small amount.⁷⁰

3.1.4. Saldanha Bay Local Municipality

The Saldanha Bay Local Municipality is the smallest municipal area in the West Coast District and has a coastline of 238 km. The main industries contributing to the local GDP are manufacturing (21.9 %), agriculture, forestry and fishing (16.9 %) and wholesale and retail trade, catering and accommodation (14.9 %). Livelihoods in the area are heavily dependent on fishing, to a less extent, agriculture. While the agriculture, forestry and fishing sector plays an import role in the local economy, especially as one the largest contributor of employment, this sector experienced below average performance between 2014 to 2018 and contracted by 2.3 % in 2019. This contraction led to the loss of 458 jobs and Saldanha Bay (17.5 %) has the highest unemployment rate in the entire West Coast District.

The local municipality is heavily reliant on the fishing industry and fish processing, which are the largest primary and secondary industries in the municipality. The Saldanha Bulk Terminal also plays an important role in Saldanha Bay as this terminal is one of the largest iron ore export facilities in Africa.⁷¹ For the Saldanha Bay Local Municipality, approximately 25% of the direct economic activity is reliant on the fishing industry and fishing makes up 31 % of the total employment. Furthermore, food processing which is predominately fish processing contributes another 5% of total employment. Therefore, employment in the local municipal area is overwhelming dependent on fishing and fish processing. The fishing and fish processing sector is underpinned by major corporations, which in turn forms a diverse cluster of smaller fishing and sub-contracting firms. Many new and established firms are also invested in the aquaculture sector over the last decade, with major mussel and oyster cultivation and processing infrastructure has been developed (Saldanha Bay Municipality, 2021). Saldanha has the largest natural port in Africa and the area is earmarked as a regional motor for the development of the Western Cape Province (Saldanha Bay Municipality, 2021).

St Helena Bay

Location

The main place of St Helena Bay is located on the West Coast in the Western Cape (32°45'30"S, 18°01'40"E), under the jurisdiction of the Saldanha Bay Local Municipality and West Coast District Municipality. St Helena Bay is a global prime fishing centre, where this industrial fisheries hub is the key component of this town's history and current economic dependence. The bay is also well known for its snoek, especially during the winter months. Composed of 18 small bays and coves, the town is best known for its historical reliance on small pelagics – specifically anchovies and sardines. Our communities of interest for St Helena Bay include sub places Shelly Point, Britannia Bay, Stompneusbaai, Columbine, Steenberg's Cove, West Point, Sandy Point and Laingville. The bay area is commonly referred to as *Agterbaai* by local residents.

The bay area previously was used by the Khoisan⁷² and was subsequently encountered in 15th century by European navigators looking for the route to the East, most notably being Vasco da Gama who named the bay Bahai da Santa Elena. In the 17th century, the Dutch East India Company established an outpost at St Helena Bay where settlers fished in the bay (Saldanha Bay Municipality, 2020). Fishing

⁷⁰ See <https://www.worldfishing.net/news101/industry-news/backlash-against-middle-men-in-south-africa>

⁷¹ See https://www.transnetportterminals.net/Ports/Pages/Saldanha_Multi.aspx

⁷² For many in the coloured community, a family's association with the West Coast is their claim to Khoisan heritage as constituting a historical bond with the Cape West Coast (Schultz, 2010).

activities were subsequently developed and established in the 18th century due to the natural protection of the bay, which allowed various anchorages and small jetties to be developed. These highly productive and sheltered habitats are also subject to incidence of harmful algal blooms and regular episodes of oxygen depletion in the coastal waters that have resulted in major mortality events for organisms such as rock lobsters and fish (Anchor Environmental, 2020).

Before the arrival of industrial fisheries, residents in St Helena Bay (similarly to Laaiplek and Lamberts Bay) were involved in small-scale linefishing and gill-netting activities. However, the economic boom of the small pelagics fishery from the 1940s and government support of job-creating industries led to the rapid expansion of a large-scale, multi-species export fishery (Jarre et al., 2013). The first formal marine structure was built in 1968 at Sandy Point (DAFF, 2015). This once relatively isolated coastal town has subsequently been transformed through urban development, political reform and economic restructuring of the local fishing industry. More recently, the rising living coast and growing rate of employment in the face of the declining fishing industry has significant implications for the local social-ecological system of St Helena Bay (Schultz, 2010).

Demographic attributes

For each community of interest within St Helena Bay, the Census 2011 data was as follows:

		Shelly Point	Britannia Bay	Stompneusbaai	Columbine	Steenberg's Cove	West Point	Sandy Point	Laingville
General	Total Estimated Population (count)	135	210	718	157	1118	100	189	8418
	Population Density (count per km²)	73 .56	141 .02	1292 .35	122 .40	315 .76	93 .54	113 .98	2693 .30
	Number of Households (count)	75	87	150	51	267	27	69	1974
	Males (%)	52%	47%	50%	49%	48%	53%	48%	50%
	Females (%)	48%	53%	50%	51%	52%	47%	52%	50%
	Female Headed Households (%)	22%	31%	22%	29%	34%	0%	21%	37%
Population Age	Median Age (years)	58	54	26	39	28	30	42	26
	Under 5 years (%)	5%	3%	9%	7%	9%	11%	2%	12%
	65 years and older (%)	30%	28%	5%	9%	6%	11%	10%	2%
Population Group	Black African (%)	2%	5%	4%	0%	3%	0%	24%	39%
	Coloured (%)	0%	3%	87%	41%	86%	36%	26%	60%
	Indian/Asian (%)	0%	0%	0%	0%	0%	0%	0%	0%
	White (%)	98%	91%	9%	59%	11%	64%	49%	0%
	Other (%)	0%	1%	0%	0%	0%	0%	1%	1%
First Language	Afrikaans (%)	76%	82%	95%	90%	95%	87%	69%	62%
	English (%)	21%	14%	3%	6%	2%	11%	9%	2%
	IsiXhosa (%)	0%	1%	1%	0%	2%	0%	21%	34%
	Other (%)	3%	3%	1%	4%	1%	2%	1%	2%

		Shelly Point	Britannia Bay	Stompneusbaai	Columbine	Steenberg's Cove	West Point	Sandy Point	Laingville
Employment Status	Unemployment Rate (%)	4%	3%	6%	0%	14%	12%	6%	19%
	Youth Unemployment Rate (between 15 and 35 years old) (%)	14%	9%	12%	0%	26%	18%	18%	33%
	Formally Employed (%)	33%	29%	33%	33%	31%	33%	35%	25%
	Informally Employed (%)	11%	4%	4%	4%	2%	3%	3%	3%
	Private household (%)	2%	4%	2%	4%	1%	0%	6%	4%
	Retired/unknown (%)	51%	64%	62%	60%	66%	61%	53%	68%
Families living below UBPL (Poverty Status)	Annual Household Income that is equal to or less than the UBPL (%)	11%	21%	56%	36%	47%	20%	41%	67%
	Head of Household 64 years and younger (%)	0%	14%	28%	28%	35%	13%	33%	63%
	Head of Household 65 years and older (%)	8%	6%	6%	13%	11%	14%	9%	4%
Level of Education	No Schooling (%)	0%	1%	3%	0%	3%	0%	3%	4%
	Completed Primary School (%)	2%	0%	10%	4%	10%	3%	2%	7%
	Completed Secondary School (%)	30%	36%	12%	29%	17%	39%	22%	11%
	Higher (%)	53%	25%	3%	8%	3%	0%	14%	2%

Most of the permanent residents in St Helena Bay are coloured and Afrikaans-speaking. In terms of the resident white population, many are retired or owners of holiday accommodation (or both) (Norton, 2014). Steenberg's Cove played a central role in the development of the local fishing community, originally developed by the Stephan Brothers as the site for a fish canning factory after World War Two. However, after the closure of the canning factory in 1969, many residents lost their jobs and turned to small-scale fishing, which remains a key occupation today.⁷³ Most of the population within St Helena Bay live in Laingville, a periphery settlement established in 1972 to accommodate the need for housing in Steenberg's Cove. Laingville houses a large portion of the traditional fishing community residing in this area, where many residents are dependent on both fishing and fish factories for their livelihoods. As in many other previously disadvantaged communities (where residents are either coloured or Black African) along the West Coast, issues in Laingville include lack of employment

⁷³ See <https://www.newframe.com/women-entrepreneurs-bring-hope-to-the-west-coast/>

opportunities (where men tend to move to neighbouring urban areas for work), high poverty rate, drug and alcohol abuse and high HIV/AIDs prevalence (Schultz, 2010).

Inventory of features

Infrastructure and service provision are in fair condition, where the town has a number of supermarkets, restaurants (including specialised menus tailored for the West Coast seafood experience), liquor stores, health facilities, post offices, police and traffic services, satellite municipal services office for the Saldanha Bay Local Municipality and school facilities. For more substantial retail, banking, administrative and secondary schooling facilities, residents travel to neighbouring Vredenburg (25 km away). Infrastructure and service provision vary between wealthier and poorer areas and as is typical with apartheid planning, the major settlement servicing the St Helena Bay town is slightly removed from the main town and Laingville residents struggle to access surrounding areas as there is no dedicated public transport (Schultz, 2010). The harbour contains significant areas of underutilised or vacant land and buildings, where the land-use character of St Helena harbour is predominantly industrial. The little retail or commercial activity that exists in the harbour area services the local work force (rather than a tourism market), where the harbour contains three areas of residential accommodation. These housing areas in the harbour specifically serve to provide accommodation to some of the labour force employed by the respective companies operating from the harbour (DAFF, 2015).

Numerous accommodation options are available across St Helena Bay, with high-end tourist facilities available in wealthier areas such as Shelly Point (including a country club and golf estate) to smaller self-catering options and a caravan park in Columbine. The town has a scenic vista where the wheat fields run down to the seaside, where a tarred road runs along the coast providing a boundary line between agriculture and fishing – providing a unique experience for tourists. St Helena Bay is also unique in that it is the only town on the West Coast where the sun rises over the sea. The bay area is a popular seaside holiday area, where the beach at St Helena Bay is a lifeguard post for NSRI (NSRI, 2020). The bay is popular for whale and dolphin sightings, particularly migratory Southern Right whales and Humpback whales. The bay also hosts a variety of marine birds and large colonies of seals (Saldanha Bay Municipality, 2020). A regular sea festival is hosted by the local tourism association, typically taking place over the summer holiday period in December.

The features for each community of interest in terms of housing and services in 2011 is detailed below (Census 2011):

		Shelly Point	Britannia Bay	Stompneusbaai	Columbine	Steenberg's Cove	West Point	Sandy Point	Laingville
Type of Dwelling	Formal (%)	100%	99%	99%	96%	97%	100%	100%	92%
	Informal/other (%)	0%	1%	1%	4%	2%	0%	0%	8%
Tenure Status	Owned and fully paid off (%)	53%	46%	62%	20%	58%	16%	30%	75%
	Owned but not yet paid off (%)	18%	17%	21%	12%	4%	0%	20%	7%
	Rented (%)	24%	26%	10%	26%	27%	88%	30%	11%

		Shelly Point	Britannia Bay	Stompneusbaai	Columbine	Steenberg's Cove	West Point	Sandy Point	Laingville
	Occupied rent-free (%)	4%	1%	4%	8%	9%	0%	9%	5%
Access to Amenities	Flush toilet connected to sewage and septic tank (%)	100%	97%	94%	94%	93%	100%	79%	97%
	Weekly refuse removal (%)	96%	97%	100%	100%	99%	100%	96%	99%
	Piped water inside dwelling (%)	100%	97%	94%	100%	85%	100%	71%	91%
	Electricity for lighting (%)	100%	100%	100%	94%	98%	89%	68%	100%

Embedded in industrial fisheries, there are 12 fish processing factories established along the 21 km shoreline from West Point to Sandy Point and Stompneusbaai (Saldanha Bay Municipality, 2021). St Helena Bay is the most important area for processing of small pelagic fishery catch in the country,⁷⁴ where four of South Africa's six large factories are located in St Helena Bay that process 80 % of the national catch (Anchor Environmental, 2020). The small pelagic fleet and fish processing work they create are therefore key to St Helena Bay, owned by large industrial fishing companies. For example, the present-day multi-national industrial fishing group Oceana⁷⁵ is now based in St Helena Bay as the industry followed the southerly shift in small pelagics along the West Coast. Oceana uses water technology and desalination plants at Amawandle Pelagic and Lucky Star in St Helena Bay, employing over 2 000 employees (Oceana Group, 2020). The processors in St Helena Bay employ approximately 3500 people in permanent and seasonal positions, which is vital to the economic wellbeing of communities in St Helena Bay and surrounding areas (Anchor Environmental, 2020). Other marine industries include seaweed harvesting and aquaculture activities – for example, the West Coast Abalone farm was established in the late 90s to cultivate abalone.⁷⁶

In terms of marine facilities, the proclaimed harbour at St Helena Bay includes a coaster berth, a 100-ton slipway with lead-in jetties on either side, a small craft boat ramp and company-owned jetties and quays for fishing craft. Dominant land use of the harbour is taken up by the industrial fishing operations where the pelagic fish factory and service yards for net repairs occupy a significant land area. Other significant land use includes boat building and repair area. Some smaller intensive fish processing operations are also located in the harbour. There is some non-marine related light industrial activity such as a logistics company. There is also a public launch site for small craft in Britannia Bay that is managed by the Saldanha Municipality.

⁷⁴ The small pelagic fishery is of national importance and its product are sold in southern Africa and internationally (particularly fishmeal) (Shannon et al., 2006).

⁷⁵ Overall, the Oceana fishing business is the catching, procuring, processing, marketing and distribution of canned fish, fishmeal, fish oil, horse mackerel, hake, lobster and squid. The business includes midwater trawling (horse mackerel), deep-sea trawling (hake), and inshore fishing for pelagic fish (anchovy, the Gulf menhaden species, herring and pilchard) (Oceana Group, 2020).

⁷⁶ See <https://westcoastabalonecompany.com>

Along with a harbour master, key marine support activities and services of the proclaimed harbour at St Helena Bay include (DAFF, 2015):

- Breakwater (a 500 m long rubble mound structure)
- Jetty 1 (46 m long and 9 m wide, used for mooring and servicing fishing vessels)
- Jetty 2 (65 m long and 10 m wide, a lead in jetty for the slipway and is used for mooring and repairing fishing vessels)
- Jetty 3 (70 m long and 10 m wide, a lead in jetty for the slipway and is used for mooring and repairing fishing vessels)
- Jetty 4 (75 m long and 10 m wide, is privately operated and maintained and is used for vessel building and repair work)
- Quay 1 (a 50 m long by 10 m wide timber deck on timber pile structure used for offloading and cleaning fish)
- Quay 2 (a 45 m long by 3 m wide timber deck on timber pile structure used by smaller fishing vessels)
- Quay 3 or coaster berth (a 67 m long by 16 m wide concrete deck on piles structure used by the larger fishing vessels for loading and unloading)
- Quay 4 (a 6 m long by 3 m wide timber deck on timber pile structure used by smaller fishing vessels)
- Boat Ramp (a 12 m wide boat ramp with concrete slabs)
- Slipway with four side slip bays

Recreational fishing activities are popular, particularly as the bay is a unique angling destination due to the typically calm and flat sea. Game fishing has become increasingly popular as well, where the area is serviced by several deep-water charter companies. Most of the professional fishing charters supply bait and tackle.⁷⁷ Species such as white stumpnose, white steenbras, silver kob and elf support recreational linefisheries in the Bay and the Berg River estuary (Anchor Environmental, 2020), and the wider St Helena Bay is an important nursery ground for juveniles of many fish species.

Involvement in fisheries

According to the Western Cape Registration and Verification Results rights holders list, there are 56, 19 and 18 small-scale fishers registered in Laingville, Stompneusbaai and Steenberg's Cove, respectively. Other active rights holders include abalone, hake deep sea trawl, hake longline, horse mackerel, net fish, small pelagics (both anchovy and sardine, as well as sardine only), squid, traditional linefish, tuna pole, West Coast rock lobster (offshore), West Coast rock lobster (nearshore) and fish processing establishments. St Helena Bay's inshore commercial line and net fisheries target snoek and harders, respectively. Other shoaling species such as yellowtail and white stumpnose feature in linefish catches, while St Joseph sharks have contributed significantly to inshore net fish catches. The Bay incorporates a rock lobster reserve that was declared in terms of the MLRA (Anchor Environmental, 2020).

While the identity of St Helena is strongly linked to the industrial fishing industry with a perception that people from St Helena Bay are not "real" fishers as they are primarily involved in fish factory activities, there are full time fishers living in the communities who have not worked in a factory (Schultz, 2010). However, few local residents in St Helena Bay own their boats and fishers either crew on someone else's boat, for example skiboats that belong to wealthier residents based in neighbouring coastal towns or a trawler owned by one of the large companies. There is only a small number of locally owned *bakkies* that still operate in the bay (Schultz, 2010).

Despite the major presence of the fishing industry in St Helena Bay, there is a high rate of unemployment (particularly in Laingville at 19 %), where this under-employment is attributed to too little work for the size of the resident workforce and the seasonal nature of the industry. Furthermore, employment patters increasingly resemble the contemporary working world of short-term contracts

⁷⁷ See www.westcoastway.co.za

with low pay and no benefits or opportunities for advancement (particularly for the youth – as evident by the 33 % youth unemployment rate in Laingville) (Schultz, 2010; Norton 2014). Restrictions imposed on fishers by quota systems mean that it is largely a supplementary economic activity rather than a financially viable livelihood strategy.⁷⁸ Poaching is also a concern in St Helena Bay; however, this is largely driven by food insecurity issues within local fisher communities (Schultz, 2010; Norton 2014) rather than the organised crime rampant in other places.

In response to the economic struggles faced by the fishing community at Steenberg's Cove, while also targeting women underemployment, a cooperative called *Weskusmandjie* (West Coast basket) was formed with women who traditionally participate in intertidal harvesting as well as pre- and post-harvest fishing activities (predominately lobster). This small business uses readily available shellfish and low-value fish to sell traditional West Coast seafood delicacies via ABALOBIs⁷⁹ online market platform. These interventions are seen as potentially important in communities heavily reliant on small-scale fishing for their livelihoods⁸⁰.

Paternoster

Location

The main place of Paternoster is located on the West Coast in the Western Cape (32°49'S 17°53'E), under the jurisdiction of the Saldanha Bay Local Municipality and West Coast District Municipality. Paternoster is one of the oldest fishing towns along the West Coast, touristically best known for its characteristic whitewashed cottages, fishing boats, beaches and lobster (Saldanha Bay Municipality, 2021). It also has an infamous reputation as the regional centre of lobster poaching on the West Coast (Norton, 2014).

Pre-colonisation, this coastline was inhabited by the Khoisan, where evidence of shell middens is found in the area today. However, most of the history focuses on the arrival of Portuguese explorers in the 15th century, who stayed on in the area. While the common story on how Paternoster's name originated is linked to the Europeans saying the Our Father prayer in Latin as they landed on the shore, a lesser-known story is that the name may have been derived from the names of the beads that the Khoisan wore that were called *Paternosters* (Smith, 2014).

As the industrial fishing industry slowly took hold along the West Coast from the late 1800s, Paternoster developed to become the centre of the lobster industry. In the 1930s, the first Redro factory was erected in Paternoster to compete with Peck's Anchovette of Britain and is now owned by Pioneer Food Group.⁸¹ While largely a traditional coloured fishing community, progressively white people moved into the area from the 1930s, initially owning lobster factories where local fishers from the Paternoster community were used to provide stock and women worked in the factories. Historically there was a heavy reliance on these factories and related marine business for livelihood and employment in Paternoster (Smith, 2014). However, as marine stocks declined over time on the West Coast, so have the industrial and traditional fishing activities of Paternoster.⁸²

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Paternoster had 511 households and a population size of 1971 (790.33 per km²), where 51 % were female and 49 % male. The median age in Paternoster was 28 years.

⁷⁸ The scarcity of marine resources and subsequent fishing restrictions has resulted in growing tensions between race groups in St Helena Bay, where coloured communities based in the area for generations view their claim to marine resources through their cultural heritage. The in-migration of Black African job seekers into the area over time has caused competition over scarce economic opportunities and conflict has risen over rights access to marine resources (Schultz, 2010).

⁷⁹ See <http://abalobi.org>

⁸⁰ See <https://www.newframe.com/women-entrepreneurs-bring-hope-to-the-west-coast/>

⁸¹ See www.paternoster.co.za

⁸² See www.paternoster.co.za

Most of the population identified as coloured (72 %), followed by 16 % Black African and 12 % white. Most residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (83 %), followed by 9 % isiXhosa and 6 % English. For residents of the town, 2 % had no schooling, 9% had primary education, 14 % had completed their secondary education and 5 % had attained a higher education degree.

With the decline of the pelagic fishing and rock lobster industries due to dwindling marine resources, Paternoster has become a popular tourist destination, which has largely offset the dwindling commercial fishing industry over the last 10 years (Smith, 2014). In 2011, the unemployment rate was 5%, while youth (15 – 35-year-olds) unemployment is 10 %. Where employed, 20 % were formally employed, 9% informally employed and 68 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 62% of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011). Notably, 55% of households with a head of 64 years old or less lived under the UBPL and the median age of the household head was 47 years old, showing high poverty levels in households with younger breadwinners – similar to Elands Bay. Social ills such as alcohol and drug abuse have increased over time in poorer households in Paternoster (Smith, 2014).

Inventory of features

Infrastructure and service provision are in fair condition, where the town has local shops, liquor stores, health facilities, a post office, police and traffic services, tourism services, satellite municipal services office for the Saldanha Bay Local Municipality and school facilities. For more substantial retail, banking, administrative and secondary schooling facilities, residents travel to neighbouring Vredenburg (15 km away).

According to the Census 2011 data, most residents resided in formal housing (97 %), where 70 % owned their property with no bond and 9 % with a bond, 15 % lived in rentals and 2 % lived in rent-free housing. Most residents had access to weekly refuse removal services (99 %), electricity (98 %), a flush toilet with a formal sewerage system (91 %) and piped water within their homes (86 %). There are stark differences in the town between the traditional fishing communities (predominately multi-generation coloured residents) and wealthier second home or tourist areas (who have moved into the area over the past 10 years). The traditional fishing community still exists within the town; however, some residents sold their fishing cottages to wealthy (mainly white) South Africans, where renovations on the old houses to promote Paternoster as a historic, quaint fishing village to tourists led to higher property taxes (Norton, 2014), becoming hard to afford by neighbours in the disadvantaged community.

Over time, Paternoster has become an increasingly popular tourist and retiree town. It is renowned for its restaurants, dubbed a *foodie* venue with renowned chefs (Saldanha Bay Municipality, 2020). Most eating establishments showcase typical seafood dishes of the West Coast and some have entered international acclaim, such as *Wolfgat*.⁸³ There are numerous accommodation options ranging from hotels, guest houses, Bed and Breakfast establishments, self-catering units to camping grounds.⁸⁴ Paternoster is popular amongst snorkelers, experienced divers, kite surfers and flyers, hikers, bikers, and kayakers. Nearby attractions include the Cape Columbine Nature reserve which is home to an abundance of flora and fauna as well as the last manned lighthouse in South Africa (Saldanha Bay Municipality, 2020).

As a popular tourist destination due to long, sandy white beaches, the beach at Paternoster is a lifeguard post for NSRI (NSRI, 2020). Whale and dolphin watching is popular along the shore, as well as birding activities. Recreational fishing activities are present, although there are limited boat excursions and charters in comparison to places such as Laaiplek. Attractions such as the Paternoster Crayfish and Seafood Festival also draw in tourists to experience the rock lobster culture of the West Coast.

⁸³ See www.wolfgat.co.za

⁸⁴ See www.westcoastway.co.za

Involvement in fisheries

According to the Western Cape Registration and Verification Results rights holders list, there are 41 small-scale fishers registered in Paternoster. Other active rights holders include small pelagics (anchovy and sardine), West Coast rock lobster (nearshore), West Coast rock lobster (offshore), white mussel and fish processing establishments. Today, Paternoster Fishery is the last remaining commercial lobster fishing enterprise in the town, with three working boats that continue to supply West Coast Rock Lobster to local and international markets aligned to the quota system of limited supply governed by stringent legislation.⁸⁵ There is a public launch site located in Paternoster, which is managed by the Saldanha Bay Municipality.

The traditional fishing community of Paternoster has declined over time due to diminishing fish stocks, the dwindling commercial fishing industry and lack of access to marine resources due to marginalisation under the colonial and apartheid eras, as well as continued policy restrictions into democracy. While small-scale fishers hoped access to marine resources such as lobster would increase after democracy, control of the lobster value chain has remained largely within the established industry that centralised processing and export. Therefore, gaps persist for equality of rights allocation between large-scale, commercial enterprises and small-scale traditional fishers operating in the near shore marine environment.⁸⁶

The traditional community in Paternoster regard local marine resources as their commons⁸⁷ and are viewed as “hostile” communities⁸⁸ as physical violence is often threatened against local marine compliance officers when trying to enforce fishing permit quotas (Norton and Jarre, 2020). Locally, the rights allocation process has been fraught with problems⁸⁹ and with a history of suspicion against how quotas are distributed (for example via community trusts in the 1990s), the traditional fishing community of Paternoster tends to turn to protest fishing and poaching activities that are underpinned by social and economic realities of a shortened fishing period and a hand-to-mouth existence (Smith, 2014).

Jacob's Bay

Location

The main place of Jacob's Bay is located on the West Coast in the Western Cape (32°58'0"S 17°53'25"E), under the jurisdiction of the Saldanha Bay Local Municipality and West Coast District Municipality. The bay's name comes from the 1800s when ships dropped off their sick to be quarantined here before reaching Cape Town (Saldanha Bay Municipality, 2021). Surrounded by farmland and developed less than 40 years ago, Jacob's Bay is not a typical West Coast village, and there has not historically been a fishing community.

Demographic attributes

Attracting more affluent residents, people who permanently live in the village mainly work in neighbouring Vredenburg (14 km away) or Saldanha Bay (20 km away) or are retirees from larger metropolitan areas such as Cape Town or Johannesburg. According to the Census 2011 data, Jacob's Bay had 162 households and a population size of 416 (121.12 per km²), where 51 % were female and 49 % male. The median age in Jacob's Bay was 43 years, where 11 % of the population was 65 years or older. Most of the population identified as white (95 %), followed by 3 % coloured and 1 % Black African. Most residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (87 %), followed by 12 % English. In terms of schooling, 39 % had attained a higher education degree and 33 % had completed secondary

⁸⁵ See www.paternostervissery.co.za

⁸⁶ See <https://www.dailymaverick.co.za/article/2020-11-09-struggling-small-scale-fishers-are-thrown-a-lifeline-by-pilot-project/>

⁸⁷ The Paternoster community at times illegally fishes lobster based on the argument that they own the rights due to ancestry (Smith, 2014).

⁸⁸ See <https://pmg.org.za/committee-meeting/23996/>

⁸⁹ See <https://ewn.co.za/2014/04/10/Paternoster-hard-hit-by-fishing-woes>

school. In 2011, the unemployment rate was low at 3 %. Where employed, 49 % were formally employed and 46 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 14 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011).

Inventory of features

Designed as an affluent residential area for people working outside of the village or retirees, there is limited infrastructure and service provision. Many of the roads are gravel and there is only one small shop and café servicing the town, where most of the basic health or alarm company services are done on a satellite basis. Residents travel to neighbouring Vredenburg or Saldanha Bay for almost all of their administrative, grocery, schooling, policing, banking and other services. There is no public transport and taxis service the area to bring in day commuters from Vredenburg who clean private residences or work in the small marine enterprises. As a popular tourist destination, there is one permanent restaurant that serves typical West Coast seafood and other smaller seasonal eateries. There are numerous accommodation options available, mainly self-catering seaside holiday houses.

Housing development in Jacob's Bay adheres to strict architectural guidelines in an effort to create a typical West Coast appearance (Saldanha Bay Municipality, 2021). According to the Census 2011 data, most residents resided in formal housing (99 %), where 33 % owned their property with no bond and 31 % with a bond, and 31 % lived in rentals. Access to basic amenities was present in all households.

Involvement in fisheries

Jacob's Bay is well known for the relative abundance of lobster found along its shoreline and is also a popular fishing area for linefish⁹⁰. Fishers would most likely be based in Vredenburg or Hopefield (45 km away), where they travel to the coast and fish around Jacob's Bay. Jacob's Bay is a public launch site for smaller vessels, which is managed by the Saldanha Bay Municipality. During lobster season, Jacob's Bay is popular for lobster diving and marine compliance inspectors visit the area periodically to enforce quota restrictions. There are only two private marine industries that are both situated out of sight from the village – the lobster factory and the abalone farm.⁹¹ Labour is not sourced locally from the town but rather from the larger urban areas of Vredenburg or Saldanha Bay. Small-scale (wild) seaweed harvesting takes place within some of the coves found along Jacob's Bay. As part of the leisure appeal, there is a long, sandy beach on the north side of the area that is popular for water sport activities such as wind surfing or kayaking.

Vredenburg

Location

The main place of Vredenburg is located about 10 km inland from the West Coast in the Western Cape (32°54'23"S, 17°59'45"E), under the jurisdiction of the Saldanha Bay Local Municipality and West Coast District Municipality. Originally a farming area and the site of dispute over water rights between farmers, the town was developed from 1875 after a congregation and church were established. Today, the town is still an agricultural hub, where it also serves as a key business and administrative centre for the West Coast (Saldanha Bay Municipality, 2021). Our communities of interest include sub place Louwville and Witteklip.

Demographic attributes

The communities of interest reside in traditional coloured communities, where most of the residents have a low-income profile and poverty rates are high. For each community of interest within Vredenburg, the Census 2011 data was as follows:

⁹⁰ See www.westcoastway.co.za

⁹¹ See <https://www.farmersweekly.co.za/animals/aquaculture/west-coast-abalone-farm-doubles-in-size-thanks-to-demand/>

		Louwville	Witteklip
General	Total Estimated Population (count)	11950	10587
	Population Density (count per km²)	4030.52	13182.19
	Number of Households (count)	2550	2910
	Males (%)	49%	50%
	Females (%)	51%	50%
	Female Headed Households (%)	30%	34%
Population Age	Median Age (years)	26	24
	Under 5 years (%)	11%	13%
	65 years and older (%)	5%	1%
Population Group	Black African (%)	6%	30%
	Coloured (%)	91%	69%
	Indian/Asian (%)	1%	0%
	White (%)	0%	0%
	Other (%)	1%	1%
First Language	Afrikaans (%)	92%	72%
	English (%)	4%	3%
	IsiXhosa (%)	2%	17%
	Other (%)	2%	9%
Employment Status	Unemployment Rate (%)	13%	19%
	Youth Unemployment Rate (between 15 and 35 years old) (%)	25%	32%
	Formally Employed (%)	27%	23%
	Informally Employed (%)	2%	3%
	Private household (%)	1%	3%
	Retired/unknown (%)	71%	71%
Families living below UBPL (Poverty Status)	Annual Household Income that is equal to or less than the UBPL (%)	35%	65%
	Head of Household 64 years and younger (%)	29%	63%
	Head of Household 65 years and older (%)	6%	2%
Level of Education	No Schooling (%)	3%	4%
	Completed Primary School (%)	7%	7%
	Completed Secondary School (%)	19%	11%
	Higher (%)	3%	2%

Inventory of features

Vredenburg is the largest administrative and commercial centre on the West Coast, housing the administrative office for the Saldanha Bay Local Municipality. Numerous business line the main road and the town is an important education centre for the region, hosting primary, secondary and tertiary⁹² institutions. There is also a popular golf course, and the West Coast Mall contains dozens of shops, including restaurants and coffee shops, as well as speciality stores (including a Sea Harvest Factory Shop). Some restaurants showcase fresh seafood and traditional West Coast fish dishes on their menus. A number of accommodation options are also available as the town is centrally placed on a popular tourist route for the West Coast.

The features for each community of interest in terms of housing and services in 2011 is detailed below (Census 2011):

		Louwville	Witteklip
Type of Dwelling	Formal (%)	97%	91%
	Informal/other (%)	3%	9%
Tenure Status	Owned and fully paid off (%)	57%	40%
	Owned but not yet paid off (%)	21%	11%
	Rented (%)	18%	34%
	Occupied rent-free (%)	2%	6%
Access to Amenities	Flush toilet connected to sewage and septic tank (%)	98%	93%
	Weekly refuse removal (%)	100%	100%
	Piped water inside dwelling (%)	94%	88%
	Electricity for lighting (%)	98%	96%

Involvement in fisheries

Situated 15 km away from the coast, there are active fisher and fishing company profiles within the town, where rights holders predominately reside in Witteklip and Louwville communities. It is most likely that these fishers travel to neighbouring Saldanha Bay (15 km away), Jacob's Bay (13 km away) or further afield along the coast to engage in fishing activities. According to the fisher rights registration lists, active holders in Vredenburg include six West Coast rock lobster (offshore), four net fish, two deep sea hake trawl, two hake longline, two small (anchovy and sardine) pelagics, two West Coast rock lobster (nearshore), two traditional linefish, two white mussel, one hake handline, one small (sardine only) pelagics and one tuna pole.

Saldanha Bay

Location

The main place of Saldanha Bay is located on the West Coast in the Western Cape (33°02'05"S, 18°00'35"E), under the jurisdiction of the Saldanha Bay Local Municipality and West Coast District Municipality. The bay is named after António de Saldanha, a Castilian-Portuguese 16th century captain who visited South Africa in the early 1500s.⁹³ Saldanha Bay is the largest natural bay in South Africa (which is partially protected by a long artificial breakwater), making it South Africa's largest natural anchorage and port with the deepest water. In the 1930s, the town was a small harbour settlement that

⁹² West Coast College is a Technical Vocational Education and Training College located in Vredenburg.

⁹³ See www.westcoastway.co.za

consisted of small fishing and military quays, where the local economy was limited to agriculture and commercial fishing due to a lack of fresh water supplies. In the 1940s, the military activities expanded and constructed a water pipeline that allowed the town to grow. Most of the urban development took place near the Saldanha Bay Canning plant, where the expanded freshwater infrastructure led to the expansion of the fish processing plant, reopening of a whaling station and establishment of small business activities. By the 1960s, the South African military had expanded in Saldanha Bay and further developed road and railway infrastructure, which enabled the industrial fishing company Sea Harvest to establish in Saldanha from 1964 and develop subsequently influence the development of the town as an industrial fisheries hub (Welman and Ferreira, 2016).

From the 1970s, the Port of Saldanha has played an important part in the Sishen-Saldanha iron ore project featuring Saldanha Steel, where iron ore from Mines in the Northern Cape is transported along a railway of more than 800 km from the mines at Sishen in the Northern Cape to the deep-water jetty in Saldanha Bay for export via Capesize ore carriers.⁹⁴ Today, the Port of Saldanha is one of eight commercial seaports in South Africa operated by the Transnet National Ports Authority. The port also houses a proclaimed harbour, which comprises of Saldanha Bay and Pepper Bay harbours, characterised as an industrial fishing harbour area located on the north-western side of the bay opposite Langebaan. Our communities of interest include sub places Blue Water Bay, Parker's Town, Diazville, White City, Saldanha (sub place) and Stofbergfontein.

⁹⁴ See <https://africaports.co.za/saldanha-bay/>

Demographic attributes

For each community of interest within Saldanha Bay, the Census 2011 data was as follows:

		Blue Water Bay	Parker's Town	Diazville	White City	Saldanha	Stoffbergsfontein
General	Total Estimated Population (count)	896	361	16984	3243	5824	311
	Population Density (count per km²)	2197.67	1530.03	6053.67	5317.64	542.34	0.44
	Number of Households (count)	318	129	4701	819	1572	120
	Males (%)	53%	50%	50%	47%	48%	58%
	Females (%)	47%	50%	50%	53%	52%	42%
	Female Headed Households (%)	13%	14%	36%	39%	18%	19%
Population Age	Median Age (years)	35	46	25	27	29	34
	Under 5 years (%)	7%	3%	12%	9%	5%	6%
	65 years and older (%)	8%	12%	3%	5%	6%	11%
Population Group	Black African (%)	11%	3%	34%	17%	26%	11%
	Coloured (%)	19%	15%	63%	81%	25%	32%
	Indian/Asian (%)	2%	2%	1%	1%	2%	0%
	White (%)	67%	78%	0%	0%	46%	58%
	Other (%)	2%	3%	1%	1%	1%	0%
First Language	Afrikaans (%)	73%	68%	66%	86%	78%	84%
	English (%)	23%	27%	3%	4%	16%	9%
	IsiXhosa (%)	2%	2%	28%	7%	3%	4%
	Other (%)	2%	3%	3%	3%	3%	3%

		Blue Water Bay	Parker's Town	Diazville	White City	Saldanha	Stoffbergsfontein
Employment Status	Unemployment Rate (%)	5%	1%	18%	11%	5%	5%
	Youth Unemployment Rate (between 15 and 35 years old) (%)	7%	4%	30%	19%	5%	9%
	Formally Employed (%)	49%	48%	25%	31%	33%	45%
	Informally Employed (%)	2%	6%	3%	2%	1%	9%
	Private household (%)	1%	1%	1%	1%	1%	2%
	Retired/unknown (%)	48%	46%	71%	67%	64%	43%
Families living below UBPL (Poverty Status)	Annual Household Income that is equal to or less than the UBPL (%)	12%	12%	62%	46%	21%	58%
	Head of Household 64 years and younger (%)	8%	9%	59%	41%	15%	48%
	Head of Household 65 years and older (%)	4%	2%	3%	6%	6%	10%
Level of Education	No Schooling (%)	1%	2%	2%	2%	1%	3%
	Completed Primary School (%)	1%	1%	7%	7%	2%	6%
	Completed Secondary School (%)	34%	42%	14%	18%	26%	31%
	Higher (%)	25%	31%	1%	4%	12%	8%

Inventory of features

Saldanha Bay serves primarily as a port town where infrastructure and service provision are in fair condition. The town offers a variety of services and businesses across the different communities of interest, such as local shops, liquor stores, health facilities, post office services, police and traffic services, tourism services, satellite municipal services office for the Saldanha Bay Local Municipality and school facilities. Specialty shops include ones selling fishing tackle (for example, the Benguela store) and marine hardware (for example, Eigelaar Marine Store). For more substantial retail, banking, administrative and secondary schooling facilities, residents travel to neighbouring Vredenburg (15 km away) or Langebaan (20 km away). With strong historic military links, Saldanha Bay is also home to a Naval training base and the South African Military Academy (Saldanha Bay Municipality, 2021). The Port of Saldanha thus houses the South African Naval Station and a NSRI rescue station.

The features for each community of interest in terms of housing and services in 2011 is detailed below (Census 2011):

		Blue Water Bay	Parker's Town	Diazville	White City	Saldanha	Stofbergfontein
Type of Dwelling	Formal (%)	100%	100%	58%	92%	98%	100%
	Informal/other (%)	0%	0%	42%	8%	2%	0%
Tenure Status	Owned and fully paid off (%)	22%	37%	64%	54%	27%	17%
	Owned but not yet paid off (%)	1%	4%	7%	6%	3%	33%
	Rented (%)	51%	21%	12%	19%	43%	37%
	Occupied rent-free (%)	24%	37%	15%	18%	24%	9%
Access to Amenities	Flush toilet connected to sewage and septic tank (%)	100%	100%	91%	98%	99%	85%
	Weekly refuse removal (%)	100%	100%	99%	98%	98%	45%
	Piped water inside dwelling (%)	98%	100%	56%	88%	98%	68%
	Electricity for lighting (%)	100%	100%	95%	96%	99%	83%

The town is also a popular holiday destination for water-sport enthusiasts. The large bay is a popular venue for regattas and favoured by sailors that use the local yacht club. The beach at Saldanha Bay is a lifeguard post for NSRI (NSRI, 2020). There is a well-established tourist industry of boat trips to visit islands (e.g., Schaafsma Charters) in the bay and is also a popular destination to charter fishing trips (e.g., Stratos Fishing Charters), particularly game fishing (Saldanha Bay Municipality, 2021). There are also numerous hiking trails and sightseeing opportunities in the area such as the French Huguenot Memorial, Doc's Cave, the Breakwater and Cummings Grave. There are numerous accommodation options ranging from hotels, guest houses, Bed and Breakfast establishments to self-catering units along the waterfront, as well as well-established seafood restaurants and cafes offering West Coast dishes.

The Port of Saldanha has been identified as the primary location for growth and expansion of rig repair, ship repair, ship building and other marine related engineering services through the Saldanha Bay Industrial Development Zone (SBIDZ). This port serves regional logistics and bulk handling capabilities with major rail infrastructure and road freight network. The port is a designated Customs Control Area and Freeport service and thus plays an important role in export (Saldanha Bay Municipality, 2021). Under Operation Phakisa, the Saldanha Bay Harbour is receiving work on the slipway infrastructure, civil and land infrastructure, as well as electrical infrastructure. Around R96 million has been allocated for infrastructure upgrades at Saldanha Bay and Pepper Bay harbours.⁹⁵ There is a Fisheries Compliance Office based at Pepper Bay harbour in Saldanha Bay.⁹⁶

Along with a harbour master, key marine support activities and services of the proclaimed harbour sites include (DAFF, 2015):

Saldanha Bay

- Repair jetty (185 m long by 10m wide suspended concrete slab on precast concrete piles structure used for mooring, repairing and servicing fishing vessels)
- Government jetty (185 m long by 30m wide suspended concrete slab on precast concrete piles structure used as a lay-up berth for trawlers)
- Dolphin Jetty (condemned)
- Trawler quay (Phase2) (Sea Harvest) (474 m long suspended RC slab with RC bearer piles at the cope and anchored sheet pile wall and raker piles at the rear used by Sea Harvest to service and offload their trawlers)

Pepper Bay

- Pepper Bay concrete quay (110 m of quay face over three sides)
- Pepper Bay timber quays (27 m and 18m long quays with hardwood timber decks on RC beams and piles)
- Boat ramps (two concrete paved boat ramps)

The bay is a popular destination for anglers who fish either from shore or boat, where there are well-established charters available in the area. Recreational fishers target kob, white stumpnose and elf in the bay or tuna and yellowtail for deep sea fishing trips. The area is also popular for recreational lobster fishing trips.⁹⁷

Involvement in fisheries

Developed as a company-established fishing town, Saldanha Bay has a sizable offshore fishing industry (with head offices based in Cape Town) and multiple coastal fishing sectors operate in the area, including lobster, linefish, mussels, oysters and seaweed (Saldanha Bay Municipality, 2021). According to the fisher rights registration lists, there are 47 small-scale fishers (Saldanha Bay) and two small-scale fishers (White City), nine traditional linefish, seven net fish, four West Coast rock lobster (offshore), three tuna pole, two small pelagics (anchovy and sardine), two West Coast rock lobster (nearshore), one hake handline and one hake longline active rights holders. There are also active rights holders for two fish processing establishments.

The importance of the fishing industry in Saldanha Bay is highlighted through its ability to sustain over 2000 jobs over the last decade. The local offshore fishing industry primarily relies on two sectors - a demersal component (deep-sea trawling largely targeting hake) and a small pelagic component (Welman and Ferreira, 2017). The primary fish species landed at Saldanha Bay Harbour is hake and other species landed at a smaller scale include linefish (snoek and yellowtail), rock lobster and tuna

⁹⁵ See <https://www.news24.com/news24/SouthAfrica/News/patricia-de-lille-visits-saldanha-bay-to-inspect-multimillion-rand-harbour-upgrade-project-20210407>

⁹⁶ See <https://www.dalrrd.gov.za/docs/media/APPLICATION%20CENTRES%202015-16%20FRAPWestern%20Cape%20and%20Northern%20Cape%20Final.pdf>

⁹⁷ See <https://www.westcoastway.co.za/fishing-west-coast>

(DAFF, 2015). While Saldanha Bay was a major centre for fishmeal production until the early 2000s (for brands such as Premier), the change in distribution of fish stocks resulted in many of these production facilities to move to Cape Town and/or Gansbaai. The dry fish industry has expanded over time in Saldanha Bay, where bokkoms are a popular commodity.⁹⁸ Saldanha Bay is also South Africa's first sea-based aquaculture zone, where marine businesses such as the rope grown mussel fishery generates local employment both on the mussel farm and in its factory.⁹⁹

The harbour supports Sea Harvest,¹⁰⁰ a major deep sea trawler company, together with smaller companies and individual owners operating in the demersal and pelagic fishing industries (DAFF, 2015). The Sea Harvest Corporation dominates the fishing industry in Saldanha Bay, where it is one of the major local employers. In 2017, the company employed 2121 permanent and 360 contracted staff members. Around 80 % of Sea Harvest's permanent employees and 96% of their contract employees lived in Saldanha Bay. In terms of the wider municipal area, it was estimated that up to 30 % of all household income was generated through Sea Harvest's activities, where the company's payments represented 6.3 % of the total local municipal income (Welman and Ferreira, 2017). Further, operations of Sea Harvest are linked to suppliers and service providers (estimated to be 165 local companies in 2017), including the employment of local fish traders.

While the local municipality has focused on promoting infrastructure and industrial development within the port over the last decade, for local communities the inter-generational presence of the fishing industry has become a part of everyday life, culture, individual habits, group routines, social norms and values, and identity of Saldanha Bay. However, this is grounded in inequalities stemming from the 1800s, when the absence of boat ownership for people of colour denied local fishing communities the ability to make a decent living off the sea. Yet, as in Doringbaai, many children in Saldanha Bay have expressed a desire to remain in the fishing industry (Welman and Ferreira, 2017). Similar to other company fishing towns such as St Helena Bay and Lambert's Bay, the shrinking marine resource bases have placed added pressure on communities dependent on the fishing industries for their livelihoods. Further, as Saldanha Bay has industrialised over the last decade, there has been an influx of job seekers into informal settlements around the town, causing tensions between the traditional coloured communities and the newer Black African entrants in terms of fish factory jobs and quota holders (Welman and Ferreira, 2017).

Langebaan

Location

The main place of Langebaan is located on the West Coast in the Western Cape (33°5'30"S, 18°2'0"E), under the jurisdiction of the Saldanha Bay Local Municipality and West Coast District Municipality. Referred to as the jewel of the West Coast, Langebaan borders the scenic Langebaan Lagoon and lies directly adjacent to the West Coast National Park – a domestic and international tourist attraction (Saldanha Bay Municipality, 2021). The town was founded in 1922 and used as a whaling station until the 1960s. Langebaan Lagoon is an internationally acclaimed Ramsar Site for its importance as a wetland and the tidal mud flats,¹⁰¹ where the saltwater lagoon is a Marine Protected Area (MPA). There are no major industries in the town to protect its culture as a fishing, holiday and retirement village.

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Langebaan had 2934 households and a population size of 8294 (411.3 per km²), where 51 % were female and 49 % male. The median age was 37 years. Just over half of the population identified as white (56 %), followed by 35 % coloured and 7 % Black African. Most residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (76 %), followed by 19 % English and 1 % isiXhosa. For residents of Langebaan, 2 % had no schooling, 4 % had completed primary school, 31 % had

⁹⁸ See <https://southafrica.co.za/saldanha-bay-industries.html>

⁹⁹ See <https://www.youtube.com/watch?app=desktop&v=RLjnovR7cpw>

¹⁰⁰ See <https://seaharvestgroup.co.za>

¹⁰¹ See <https://www.westcoastway.co.za>

completed secondary school and 16 % had attained a higher education degree. The unemployment rate was low at 4 %. Where employed, 34 % were formally employed, 4 % were informally employed, 5 % worked in a private household and 58 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 31 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011).

Inventory of features

Infrastructure and service provision are in good condition, where the town has variety of shops (including fishing-related stores such as Dihanti Paint Gardening Hardware/Fishing), banking facilities, supermarkets, health facilities, post office services, police and traffic services, tourism services, satellite municipal services office for the Saldanha Bay Local Municipality, school facilities and a highly regarded retirement village. According to the Census 2011 data, most residents resided in formal housing (99 %), where 44 % owned their property with no bond and 19 % with a bond, 31 % lived in rentals and 3 % lived in rent-free housing. Most residents had access to electricity (99 %), a flush toilet with a formal sewerage system (99 %), weekly refuse removal services (99 %) and piped water within their homes (98 %).

As a popular tourist destination, there are several good seafood restaurants and numerous accommodation options, from boutique hotels to guest houses and self-catering units. The town also hosts various resorts including the Langebaan Country Estate and Mykonos with its marina, casino and conference facilities. As an internationally known wind and kite surfing destination, Langebaan also has good marine recreational facilities such as boat yards and a yacht club. The beach at *Leentjiesklip* in Langebaan is a lifeguard post for NSRI (NSRI, 2020). Recreational fishing is a popular activity within the lagoon and along the beaches, and fishing trips and leisure cruises are also well-established (e.g., Elite Charters or Langebaan Fishing). The Langebaan Mussel Festival is an annual festival that attracts tourists to the town.

Involvement in fisheries

According to the fisher rights registration lists, active holders include 33 small-scale fishers, nine net fish, two abalone, two West Coast rock lobster (offshore), one large pelagics, one traditional linefish and one fish processing establishment.

There is a well-established traditional fishing community in Langebaan where households are dependent on fisheries. Many of the predominately coloured net fishers in the lagoon descend from slaves, who historically turned to subsistence fishing to supplement their minimal wages. During apartheid, local fishing communities in Langebaan and Saldanha Bay were relocated from prime areas near the lagoon and the bay area. The Langebaan MPA, established as a marine reserve in 1976 and declared an MPA in 2000, has a dispossession legacy where this MPA impacted small-scale fishers in several ways: forced removals of some families from inside the West Coast National Park as late as 1985; restricted access to traditional fishing grounds within the MPA; ecotourism was a priority over traditional fisheries; and exclusion from decision-making processes over zoning (Sunde, 2014). Today, stressors include diminished fish stocks that have resulted in strict quota systems and the enforcement of non-fishing zones within the MPA, as well as aquaculture projects that have raised environmental concerns among local fishers.¹⁰²

Hopefield

Location

The main place of Hopefield is located 30 km inland from the West Coast in the Western Cape (33°03'56"S, 18°21'03"E), under the jurisdiction of the Saldanha Bay Local Municipality and West Coast District Municipality. Started in 1844, the town serves as an agricultural hub for grain, dairy, meat, honey and *waterblommetjie* farmers of the area. The town is also a popular tourist destination to

¹⁰² See <https://www.dailymaverick.co.za/article/2019-10-13-local-fishers-and-activists-want-langebaan-fish-farms-stopped-but-government-mussels-in/>

view wildflowers and the annual Fynbos Show showcases indigenous flower species (Saldanha Bay Municipality, 2021).

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Hopefield had 1815 households and a population size of 6449 (199.32 per km²), where 51 % were female and 49 % male. The median age was 30 years. Most of the population identified as coloured (82 %), followed by 14 % white and 3 % Black African. Most residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (94 %), followed by 3 % English and 2 % other languages. For residents of the town, 3 % had no schooling, 9% had primary education, 16 % had completed their secondary education and 5 % had attained a higher education degree. The unemployment rate was 8 %, while youth (15 – 35-year-olds) unemployment was 16 %. Where employed, 28 % were formally employed, 3 % were informally employed, 2 % were employed in a private household and 67 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 44 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011).

Inventory of features

Infrastructure and service provision are in fair condition, where the town has local shops, liquor stores, health facilities, a post office, police and traffic services, tourism services, satellite municipal services office for the Saldanha Bay Local Municipality, school facilities and a modern retirement centre. For more substantial retail, banking, administrative and secondary schooling facilities, residents travel to neighbouring Vredenburg (40 km away). According to the Census 2011 data, most residents resided in formal housing (98 %), where 71 % owned their property with no bond and 9 % with a bond, 14 % lived in rentals and 4 % lived in rent-free housing. Most residents had access to electricity (99 %), a flush toilet with a formal sewerage system (99 %), weekly refuse removal services (94 %) and piped water within their homes (93 %).

Involvement in fisheries

There is a large fishing activity presence in Hopefield, including a traditional fishing community.¹⁰³ While the town is located inland, it is likely that fishers travel to the coast (the nearest location being Langebaan at approximately 30 km away) to engage in fishing activities. According to the fisher rights registration lists, active holders include eight small-scale fishers, one large pelagics, one small (anchovy and sardine) pelagics, one traditional linefish and one West Coast rock lobster (offshore).

3.1.5. Swartland Local Municipality

Most of the municipal area consists of farmlands, natural areas and coastal areas. In 2017, the local economy was dominated by the manufacturing sector (R1.983 billion; 24.5 %), followed by wholesale and retail trade, catering and accommodation (R1.404 billion; 17.4 %) and agriculture, forestry and fishing sector (R1.303 billion; 16.1 %). The majority (49.9 %) of the formally employed workforce of the Swartland operate within the low-skill sector, where the agriculture, forestry and fishing sector contributed the most jobs to the area in 2017 (13 363; 29.3 %) (Swartland Municipality, 2020).

Yzerfontein

Location

The main place of Yzerfontein is a small harbour town situated on the West Coast in the Western Cape (33.333°S, 18.162°E), under the jurisdiction of the Swartland Local Municipality and West Coast District Municipality. Originally a farm, the town began to develop from the 1930s around a whaling station. The small, unproclaimed harbour has since been converted into a fishing harbour, best known for landing lobster and snoek. Today, the main economic activities of the town include tourism, mining and fishing.¹⁰⁴

¹⁰³ See <https://www.fishingindustrynewssa.com/2020/10/02/western-cape-small-scale-fishers-demand-answers/>

¹⁰⁴ See <https://yzerfonteintourism.co.za>

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Yzerfontein had 489 households and a population size of 1140 (170.53 per km²), where 51 % were female and 49 % male. The median age was 57 years. Most of the town's population identified as white (81 %), followed by 9 % Black African and 6 % coloured. Most residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (72 %), followed by 25 % English, 2 % other languages and 1 % isiXhosa. For residents of the town, 1 % had no schooling, 2 % had primary education, 35 % had completed their secondary education and 29 % had attained a higher education degree. The unemployment rate was low at 3 %, while youth (15 – 35-year-olds) unemployment was 4 %. Where employed, 29 % were formally employed, 3 % were informally employed, 4 % were employed in a private household and 63 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 33 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011).

Inventory of features

The town has developed over time to cater for the tourism industry, as well as wealthier retirees or second homeowners from larger metropolitan areas in South Africa. Infrastructure and service provision are in good condition, where the town has numerous local shops and high-end cafes/restaurants, a supermarket, health facilities, a post office, tourism services and satellite municipal services. Bait and fishing tackle can be purchased at the local fish store Dassen Seafood.¹⁰⁵ For more substantial law enforcement, retail, banking, administrative and schooling facilities, residents travel to neighbouring Darling (25 km away). According to the Census 2011 data, most residents resided in formal housing (98 %), where 56 % owned their property with no bond and 19 % with a bond, 18 % lived in rentals and 4 % lived in rent-free housing. Most residents had access to electricity (99 %), a flush toilet with a formal sewerage system (99 %), weekly refuse removal services (98 %) and piped water within their homes (98 %).

As a tourist hub, numerous accommodation options are available from bed and breakfast options to self-catering and a caravan park. Yzerfontein is known for its Sixteen Mile Beach that attracts hikers and Dassen Island, a nature reserve that is about 10 km offshore. The town also has an angling club, where most of the fishing activities take place around the Dassen Island area and its surrounding reefs. The shoreline also provides good sighting opportunities for whales and dolphins. Yzerfontein serves as a rescue base and Pink Rescue Buoy placement for the NSRI (NSRI, 2020).

The town is a popular recreational fishing destination, where the annual Yzerfontein Festival & Events and Snoek Classic, as well as the Galjoen¹⁰⁶ Derby are highlights during holiday season.¹⁰⁷ The most popular recreational fishing activities include fishing for snoek and lobster along the shoreline.

Involvement in fisheries

According to the fisher rights registration lists, active holders include 16 small-scale fishers, 15 traditional linefish, one net fish and one white mussel. The Yzerfontein slipway is a public launch site for smaller vessels, which is managed by the Swartland Municipality. There is also a fish delivery and collection area with facilities for the boat hooking to offload, cleaning of fish, and a freezing facility for the guts that the municipality collects and sends for processing as a fertiliser. This operation is situated about two kilometres from the Yzerfontein harbour to minimise noise and odour impacts on residents during the fishing season.¹⁰⁸

¹⁰⁵ See <https://www.facebook.com/Dassen-Seafoods-Yzerfontein-1623392887682094/>

¹⁰⁶ Galjoen (*Dichistius capensis*) are endemic fish and is South Africa's national fish. Listed as Near Threatened in the 2018 National Biodiversity Assessment, this species is rated as a no-sale species within South Africa, only recreational fishers with a permit may catch them (SASSI, 2021).

¹⁰⁷ See <https://yzerfonteintourism.co.za>

¹⁰⁸ See <https://pmg.org.za/taled-committee-report/3092/>

Malmesbury

Location

The main place of Malmesbury is located 50 km inland from the West Coast in the Western Cape (33°27'S, 18°44'E), under the jurisdiction of the Swartland Local Municipality and West Coast District Municipality. Malmesbury was named in 1829 after the Earl of Malmesbury and has traditionally functioned as an industrial agricultural hub in the Swartland municipal area, home to the oldest milling company in South Africa that was established in the town in 1924.¹⁰⁹

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Malmesbury had 2751 households and a population size of 10292 (788.93 per km²), where 53 % were male and 47 % female. The town had a median age of 35 years. Most of the population identified as white (63 %), followed by 23 % coloured, 13 % Black African and 1 % Indian/Asian. Most residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (86 %), followed by 7 % English, 4 % isiXhosa and 3 % other languages. For residents of the town, 1 % had no schooling, 1 % had primary education, 27 % had completed their secondary education and 19 % had attained a higher education degree. The unemployment rate was low at 2 %, while youth (15 – 35-year-olds) unemployment was 4 %. Where employed, 30 % were formally employed, 3 % were informally employed, 4 % were employed in private households and 64 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 30 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011).

Inventory of features

An agricultural base for the local economy, the town is the largest in the Swartland municipal area and serves as the administrative centre for the local municipality (Swartland Municipality, 2020). Therefore, infrastructure is in good condition with access to basic services, including larger retail, administrative, municipal, medical and education facilities. According to the Census 2011 data, all residents resided in formal housing, where 33 % owned their property without bond and 21 % with bond, 43 % lived in rentals and 2 % lived in rent-free housing. All households had access to amenities such as refuse removal, electricity and sewerage, and 95 % had access to piped water.

Involvement in fisheries

According to the fisher rights registration lists, there are rights holders for two fish processing establishments. As an agricultural processing hub with a well-developed industrial area in Malmesbury, these rights are linked to fish processing factory shops such as Ocean Processors.¹¹⁰ There are also various seafood outlets in the town, for example *Swartland Visserij* that specialises in fish and chips.

3.2. Overberg District Municipality

The Overberg municipal area covers 12 241 square kilometres located to the south-east of Cape Town. It includes Cape Agulhas, the southernmost point in Africa, and has coastline on both the Atlantic Ocean and the Indian Ocean. With its headquarters in Bredasdorp, the Overberg District Municipality governs the four local municipalities of Cape Agulhas, Overstrand, Swellendam and Theewaterskloof (Figure 6). Traditionally, the Overberg region is considered as the breadbasket of the Cape due to extensive grain farming activities (mainly wheat) in this district. In 2019, this district municipality had a population size of 294 391. The agriculture, forestry and fishing sector contributed 9.9 % to the district's GDP in 2019, with the second highest employment contribution of 20.9 %. However, both GDP and employment growth in this sector are in decline (Overberg Municipality, 2020).

¹⁰⁹ See <https://southafrica.co.za>

¹¹⁰ See <https://ocean-processors-factory-shop.business.site/>



Figure 6: Overberg District Municipality with four local municipalities and key urban areas (Western Cape Government, 2021).

3.2.1. Theewaterskloof Local Municipality

The Theewaterskloof Local Municipality is driven by agriculture and does not extend to the coast. Agricultural activities include wheat production, stock farming and fruit production (Overberg Municipality, 2020).

Genadendal

Location

The main place of Genadendal is located 70 km inland of the southwest coast of the Western Cape (34°02'S, 19°33'E), under the jurisdiction of the Theewaterskloof Local Municipality and Overberg District Municipality. Known as the *Valley of Grace*, the town was established by the Moravian Church in the mid-1700s and is the oldest mission station in South Africa. Surrounding fruit farms provide the main source of employment and the economy of the town is dominated by development projects and small-scale agricultural production and subsistence gardening.¹¹¹

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Genadendal had 1593 households and a population size of 5663 (1426.44 per km²), where 51 % were female and 49 % male. The town had a median age of 27 years. Most of the population identified as coloured (94 %), followed by 3 % Black African, 2 % other population groups and 1 % white. Most residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (92 %), followed by 5 % other languages and 3 % English. For residents of the town, 2 % had no schooling, 9 % had primary education, 11 % had completed their secondary education and 5 % had attained a higher education degree. The unemployment rate was 12 %, while youth (15 – 35-year-olds) unemployment was 22 %. Where employed, 22 % were formally employed, 8 % were informally employed, 1 % were employed in private households and 69 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 68 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2021).

¹¹¹ See <http://www.twk.org.za>

Inventory of features

Infrastructure in the town is in good to fair condition with access to basic services, including basic retail, administrative, municipal, medical and education facilities. According to the Census 2011 data, most residents resided in formal housing (91 %), where 73 % owned their property without bond and 2 % with bond, 14 % lived in rentals and 9 % lived in rent-free housing. Most households had access to amenities such as refuse removal (99 %), electricity (96 %), sewerage (94 %) and piped water (74 %).

Involvement in fisheries

According to the fisher rights registration lists, there is one traditional linefish rights holder in the town. The rights holder most likely travels approximately 70 km to the coast to engage in fishing activities.

Botrivier

Location

The main place of Botrivier is located 25 km inland of the southwest coast of the Western Cape (34°02'S, 19°33'E), under the jurisdiction of the Theewaterskloof Local Municipality and Overberg District Municipality. In pre-colonial times, the area was used by the Khoi-Khoi herders due to the rich pastures found along the banks of the river. Today, the area is known for its vineyards and wine farms and has become an increasingly popular agri-tourist destination, where the town is an agricultural service centre.¹¹²

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Botrivier had 1579 households and a population size of 5505 (2852.33 per km²), with an even split between males and females (50 %). The town had a median age of 29 years. Most of the population identified as coloured (69 %), followed by 22 % Black African, 7 % white and 1 % other population groups. Most residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (72 %), followed by 14 % isiXhosa, 9 % other languages and 5 % English. For residents of the town, 3 % had no schooling, 6 % had primary education, 18 % had completed their secondary education and 2 % had attained a higher education degree. The unemployment rate was 11 %, while youth (15 – 35-year-olds) unemployment was 22 %. Where employed, 31 % were formally employed, 1 % were informally employed, 1 % were employed in private households and 66 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 63 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011).

Inventory of features

Infrastructure in the town is in good to fair condition with access to basic services, including retail, administrative, municipal, medical and primary education facilities. According to the Census 2011 data, most residents resided in formal housing (79 %), where 62 % owned their property without bond and 4 % with bond, 16 % lived in rent-free housing and 15 % lived in rentals. Most households had access to amenities such as refuse removal (87 %), sewerage (82 %), electricity (81 %) and piped water (77 %).

Involvement in fisheries

According to the Western Cape Registration and Verification Results rights holders list, there are three small-scale fishers registered in the town. The rights holders most likely travel approximately 25 km to the coast to engage in fishing activities.

3.2.2. Overstrand Local Municipality

The area is mainly known as a tourism and holiday destination, where it is also well known for its small fishing communities (Overberg Municipality, 2020). Most of the towns that fall under Overstrand Local Municipality are located on the coast and due to the close proximity to Cape Town, many are holiday resorts. The main economic drivers in the municipal area are tourism; aquaculture and agriculture; finance, real estate and business services; and the secondary service industry (Overstrand Municipality, 2021). In 2016, the primary sector of agriculture, forestry and fishing contributed 6.5 % to the local

¹¹² See <http://www.twk.org.za>

GDP and its contribution to employment was 12.6 %. Only the agriculture, forestry and fishing and construction sectors in the Overstrand municipal area reported an average decrease in jobs (-1 652 and -326 respectively) between 2006 and 2016.¹¹³ The Kleinmond-Hangklip coastal area that includes Rooi Els, Pringle Bay and Betty's Bay is situated in the Kogelberg Biosphere Reserve, which was the first UNESCO designated biosphere reserve in South Africa (Overstrand Municipality, 2021). However, this local municipality area is also the notorious centre of abalone poaching, focused on Betty's Bay, Hawston and Gansbaai (Norton, 2014), linked to organised and transnational crime largely involving triad gangs from East Asia (Vrancken and Hugo, 2020).

Rooi Els

Location

The main place of Rooi Els is a small seaside village on the southwest coast of the Western Cape (34°18'05"S, 18°48'59"E), under the jurisdiction of the Overstrand Local Municipality and Overberg District Municipality. Formally declared in 1948, Rooi Els was named after the river and farm at its present-day location.¹¹⁴

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Rooi Els had 64 households and a population size of 125 (108.70 per km²), where 53 % were male and 47 % female. The town had a median age of 62 years. Most of the population identified as white (92 %), where 49 % spoke English as their home language, followed by 47 % Afrikaans. For residents of the town, 17 % had completed their secondary education and 71 % had attained a higher education degree. The unemployment rate was low at 5 %. Where employed, 40 % were formally employed, 2 % were informally employed, 5 % were employed in private households and 52 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). 7 households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011).

Inventory of features

The town roads are narrow, untarred and without streetlights, where homes vary from little seaside cottages to larger beachside manors.¹¹⁵ According to the Census 2011 data, all residents resided in formal housing, where 59 % owned their property without bond and 23 % with bond, 11 % lived in rentals and 3 % lived in rent-free housing. All households had access to amenities such as sewerage, electricity, and piped water, where most household (86 %) had access to refuse removal.

Other than basic services such as the Rooi Els Grill, Eco Centre, coffee shop and a café, the town hosts some tourist accommodation options and is a big draw card for whale watching season. As a seaside holiday and retirement village, there are no major industries present in the town and residents predominately work (and access services) in larger neighbouring centres such as Gordons Bay (25 km away).

Involvement in fisheries

Recreational fishing activities are very popular in the area, where participants fish directly from the rocks near the small beach and estuary of Rooi Els.¹¹⁶ The Rooiels Coastal Slipway is a public launch site for smaller craft and managed in a private/public partnership with the local municipality, where this is active mainly during peak fishing and festive seasons.¹¹⁷ In the past, the slipway was in disrepair so

¹¹³ See <https://www.westerncape.gov.za/provincial-treasury/files/atoms/files/WC032%20Overstrand%202018%20Socio-economic%20Profile%20%28SEP-LG%29.pdf>

¹¹⁴ See <https://xplorio.com/pringle-bay/en/about/history/>

¹¹⁵ The town, like many others set along this coastline in short driving distance from Cape Town, is a popular second home and retirement destination.

¹¹⁶ See <https://showme.co.za/lifestyle/fishing-along-the-whale-coast-overberg-western-cape/>

¹¹⁷ See <https://www.overstrand.gov.za/en/documents/meeting-minutes/portfolio-committee/november-2016/3884-09-item-3-p31-40-community-services-pc-agenda-nov-2016/file>

the Rooi Els Boat Club was formed to regulate, control and organize local boating and fishing activities. The club placed a control boom to access the slipway and the slipway was repaired. Access via the boom is limited to key-holding members, the authorities and NSRI personnel.¹¹⁸

Pringle Bay

Location

Like neighbouring Rooi Els, the main place of Pringle Bay is a seaside village on the southwest coast of the Western Cape (34°21'S, 18°49'E), under the jurisdiction of the Overstrand Local Municipality and Overberg District Municipality. The surrounding areas offer good viewing opportunities of Southern Right whales that visit the shores between June and December months, making the town a popular seasonal tourist destination.¹¹⁹

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Pringle Bay had 428 households and a population size of 801 (245.71 per km²), where 52 % were female and 48 % male. The town had a median age of 55 years. Most of the population identified as white (84 %), followed by 8 % Black African, 5 % coloured and 2 % other population groups. Half the residents spoke English as their home language (50 %), followed by 43 % Afrikaans and 6 % other languages and 3 % English. For residents of the town, 1 % had no schooling, 33 % had completed their secondary education and 38 % had attained a higher education degree. The unemployment rate was low at 4 %, while youth (15 – 35-year-olds) unemployment was 9 %. Where employed, 26 % were formally employed, 10 % were informally employed, 3 % were employed in private households and 61 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 20 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011).

Inventory of features

In this small community, many of the houses are only used as holiday houses by their owners, where some tourist accommodation options are available to rent. The roads are untarred with no streetlights within the town and there are some restaurants and curio shops that serve locals and tourists. As a seaside holiday and retirement village, there are no major industries present in the town and residents predominately work (and access services) in larger neighbouring centres. According to the Census 2011 data, most residents resided in formal housing (99 %), where 61 % owned their property without bond and 15 % with bond, 18 % lived in rentals and 4 % lived in rent-free housing. All households had access to electricity, while most households had access to amenities such as piped water (99 %), sewerage (97 %) and refuse removal (85 %).

Involvement in fisheries

According to the fisher rights registration lists, active holders include four small-scale fishers and one West Coast rock lobster (nearshore) fisher. There is a public launch site located five 5 km from Pringle Bay called Maanschynbaai (or Maasbaai) Slipway in Hangklip that is managed by the Overstrand Local Municipality during peak times. Although the area is notorious for its freak waves, recreational fisheries are popular in the area where participants fish directly from the rocks along the shoreline, as well as dive for abalone and lobster (with the correct permits). Pringle Bay also has a popular beach for swimming and snorkelling activities.

Betty's Bay

Location

The main place of Betty's Bay is a seaside town on the southwest coast of the Western Cape (34.363°S, 18.885°E), under the jurisdiction of the Overstrand Local Municipality and Overberg District Municipality. The town initially started to grow when a whaling station was established in Stony Point

¹¹⁸ See <https://rooiels.weebly.com/rebc-boat-club.html>

¹¹⁹ See <https://xplorio.com/pringle-bay/en/about/history/>

in 1912, which ran up until the 1930s.¹²⁰ Today, as a popular seaside holiday destination, tourism dominates the town's economy.

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Betty's Bay had 665 households and a population size of 1379 (65.70 per km²), where 52 % were female and 48 % male. The town had a median age of 54 years. Most of the population identified as white (73 %), followed by 21 % coloured, 4 % Black African and 2 % other population groups. Most of the residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (60 %), followed by 36 % English, 2 % other languages and 1 % isiXhosa. For residents of the town, 1 % had no schooling, 2 % had completed their primary education, 28 % had completed their secondary education and 35 % had attained a higher education degree. The unemployment rate was 6 %, while youth (15 – 35-year-olds) unemployment was 20 %. Where employed, 24 % were formally employed, 7 % were informally employed, 5 % were employed in private households and 63 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 18 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA 2011).

Inventory of features

A larger seaside town than neighbouring Pringle Bay, Betty's Bay is more developed and has a variety of holiday houses and a large retirement community. There are basic retail, supermarket and post office services in the town. However, most administrative, municipal, retail, business and education services are in larger centres (such as Gordon's Bay (35 km away) or Hermanus (40 km away)). According to the Census 2011 data, most residents resided in formal housing (99 %), where 60 % owned their property without bond and 17 % with bond, 16 % lived in rentals and 5 % lived in rent-free housing. Most households had access to amenities such as electricity (99 %), piped water (99 %), sewerage (99 %) and refuse removal (98 %).

As a popular tourist and weekend-away destination, Betty's Bay has numerous accommodation options, largely self-catering and bed and breakfast options ranging from cottages to seaside manors. There is also a variety of restaurant and café options, including seafood eateries. The area is popular with eco-tourists due to the scenic beaches and mountains, particularly the Harold Porter National Botanical Gardens.¹²¹ Furthermore, the inshore region of Betty's Bay has been designated as a MPA where shore-based angling is permitted (i.e., no fishing off a vessel in its boundaries is permitted), where the Stony Point African Penguin Colony is also visited by international tourists.¹²² There is also a small concrete slipway at Stony Point within the MPA used by members of the local boat club.

Involvement in fisheries

According to the fisher rights registration lists, there are seven small-scale fishers, four West Coast rock lobster (nearshore), three West Coast rock lobster (nearshore), one abalone and one traditional linefisher active rights holders. Betty's Bay is also a popular recreational fishing area with an angling club and has numerous surf and rock fishing spots along the coastline. This includes shore angling competitions that are held on a regular basis.

Kleinmond

Location

The main place of Kleinmond is a seaside town on the southwest coast of the Western Cape (34.34°S, 19.02°E), under the jurisdiction of the Overstrand Local Municipality and Overberg District Municipality. The area first began to develop during the 19th century when a group of fishers settled in what is now the harbour of modern-day Kleinmond. The town was formalised from the 1950s when the harbour was declared an industrial area and infrastructure was subsequently developed from the 1960s

¹²⁰ See <https://marinewildlifemagazine.wordpress.com/2015/06/13/waaygat-whaling-station-at-stony-point/>

¹²¹ See <https://www.sanbi.org/gardens/harold-porter/>

¹²² See <http://mpaforum.org.za/portfolio/bettys-bay/>

when a tar road, a town hall, municipal offices and a library were built in town.¹²³ Today, tourism plays a key role in the town's local economy as the town is a popular tourist destination, particularly for local tourists within the Western Cape.

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Kleinmond had 2733 households and a population size of 6634 (930.43 per km²), with an even split between males and females (50 %). The town had a median age of 34 years. Approximately 36 % of the population identified as white, followed by 35 % Black African, 28 % coloured and 1 % other population groups. Most of the residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (60 %), followed by 25 % isiXhosa, 8 % English and 7 % other languages. For residents of the town, 2 % had no schooling, 6 % had completed their primary education, 20 % had completed their secondary education and 16 % had attained a higher education degree. The unemployment rate was 17 %, while youth (15 – 35-year-olds) unemployment was 35 %. Where employed, 21 % were formally employed, 5 % were informally employed, 3 % were employed in private households and 71 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 56 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011).

Inventory of features

A larger seaside town than neighbouring Betty's Bay, Kleinmond is the main commercial point for the residents of Hangklip, Pringle Bay, Betty's Bay and the local Kleinmond community. There is a wide selection of boutique shops (including fishing tackle retail¹²⁴), galleries and supermarkets, including municipal and other administrative services. The town has a well-developed estate agent industry with numerous accommodation options, largely self-catering and bed and breakfast options ranging from cottages to seaside manors. There is also a variety of restaurant, pub and café options, including seafood eateries. The popular beach and lagoon in Kleinmond are a drawcard for water enthusiasts, with a boat club and small business where boats can be rented. Kleinmond serves as a rescue base and Pink Rescue Buoy placement for the NSRI (NSRI, 2020) and also has a Fisheries Compliance Office.

The town is spatially divided between the wealthier population residing mainly on the seaside (including the waterfront area of the harbour) and poorer communities living in settlement areas, particularly *Overhills* informal settlement. The wealthier area consists of suburban homes, holiday accommodation, formal businesses and municipal facilities. The poorer areas have a mix of older cottages, RDP housing and informal dwellings and small businesses. According to the 2011 Census, most residents resided in formal housing (71 %), where 53 % owned their property with no bond and 8 % with bond, 23 % lived in rentals and 13 % lived in rent-free housing. Most residents had access to weekly refuse removal services (98 %), a flush toilet with a formal sewerage system (91 %), access to electricity (77 %) and piped water within their homes (66 %).

Kleinmond has an active harbour where many commercial fishermen make their living along the Kogelberg coastline. There is the busy public launch site of Kleinmond Coastal Slipway that is managed on a full-time basis by the local municipality (Overberg Municipality, 2020). The harbour area has honey, flower and fishing industries and is a very popular recreational fishing destination. The harbour was upgraded as part of a project between the district municipality, private landowners and disenfranchised fishing community (who were subject to forced removals under the apartheid regime in the 1960s) where the Harbour Road and a new Harbour Square has been developed for retail and restaurant attractions.¹²⁵

Involvement in fisheries

According to the fisher rights registration lists, active holders include 11 abalone, six traditional linefish, four small-scale fishers, two West Coast rock lobster (offshore), one small (anchovy & sardine) pelagics and one tuna pole. There is a strong traditional fishing community present in Kleinmond with co-

¹²³ See <https://southafrica.co.za/history-kleinmond.html>

¹²⁴ See <https://www.facebook.com/KleinmondFishingTackle>

¹²⁵ See <http://www.harbourroad.co.za/>

operatives amongst small-scale fishers and women from the fishing communities. Recreational angling activities are also hugely popular with a number of competitions taking place during the year – usually comprising of shore-based angling along the rocky coastline. For example, as part of the annual Kryvis Festival Kleinmond, there is a fishing competition (referred to as the Galjoen Derby) that takes place between Hawston harbour and Rooi Els.

While the traditional fishing community has been present in Kleinmond for a number of generations, fish historically caught in the area such as white steenbras, silver kob and white stumpnose are no longer abundant. Common issues facing most traditional fishing communities in the Kogelberg area include shrinking marine resources, deteriorating sea conditions, strict quota allocations, policy and market marginalisation of small-scale fishers and high levels of poverty, which fuel poaching activities along the coast, including Kleinmond.¹²⁶

In response, there is a dedicated World Wide Fund for Nature South Africa (WWF SA) office at the Kleinmond harbour that forms part of the Kogelberg Small-Scale Fisheries Improvement Project (FIP).¹²⁷ FIP has worked with small-scale fishers from 2013 on conservation practices and to actively participate in the supply chain.¹²⁸ Today, WWF SA has partnered with ABALOBI to connect local small-scale fishers in Kleinmond to a digital market, improving the previously absent cold chain system and connecting fishers directly with buyers. The WWF SA program also includes building alternative livelihoods, focusing on the youth from fishing communities (where unemployment rates are disproportionately higher) who are interested in leaving the fishing industry and moving into conservation or tourism livelihoods. Local fishers facing diminishing capacity to sustain their livelihoods on fishing activities also take part in the WWF SA program as citizen scientists, where they are employed a few times a year to deploy camera monitoring devices in their fishing grounds to support fisheries management science.¹²⁹

Fisherhaven

Location

The main place of Fisherhaven is situated on the shores of the Bot River Estuary in the Western Cape (34°21'39"S, 19°07'47"E), under the jurisdiction of the Overstrand Local Municipality and Overberg District Municipality. Fisherhaven is a settlement established in the mid to late 20th century as a holiday destination. In 1968 Fisherhaven was proclaimed as a white Group Area and then included Sonesta from the 1970s, which was established as a resort for coloureds. By the 1990s, there were only 40 permanent residents living in the village, where development has been slow and it has remained a traditional holiday village (Overstrand Municipality, 2009a). In the present day there has been an increase in younger families and retirees settle in the area over time due to the desirable country lifestyle yet relatively close proximity to the urban centre and services of Hermanus (15km away).

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Fisherhaven had 308 households and a population size of 723 (243.43 per km²), where 51 % were female and 49 % male. The town had a median age of 44 years. Most of the population identified as white (70 %), followed by 26 % coloured, 2 % Black African and 2 % other population groups. Just over half of the residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (51 %), followed by 46 % English and 3 % other languages. For residents of the town, 1 % had no schooling,

¹²⁶ See <https://www.timeslive.co.za/news/south-africa/2020-10-09-there-are-no-jobs-this-is-how-we-support-our-families-says-kleinmond-poacher/>

¹²⁷ See <https://www.wwf.org.za/?14021/small-scale-fisheries-release>

¹²⁸ For example, a women's cooperative (i.e., Kleinmond Vrou Primary Cooperative) from the community engaged with the retail group Pick 'n Pay by collecting and pickling mussels for sale in stores and in 2015, FIP facilitated collaboration between WWF SA and Pick 'n Pay and the small-scale fishers to actively involve them in the seafood supply chain.

¹²⁹ See <https://edition.cnn.com/videos/world/2021/06/04/south-africa-western-cape-kleinmond-fishing-kogelberg-nature-reserve-spc.cnn>

4 % had completed their primary education, 34 % had completed their secondary education and 27 % had attained a higher education degree. The unemployment rate was 6 %, while youth (15 – 35-year-olds) unemployment was 9 %. Where employed, 34 % were formally employed, 3 % were informally employed, 2 % were employed in private households and 61 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 16 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011).

Inventory of features

As a small holiday town, the area is still largely undeveloped with only a few tar roads and streetlights. The services primarily cater for residential properties and there is a small supermarket, a limited number of eating places and holiday accommodation such as a resort, bed and breakfast and self-catering options. According to the Census 2011 data, most residents resided in formal housing (99 %), where 43 % owned their property without bond and 26 % with bond, 26 % lived in rentals and 4 % lived in rent-free housing. Most households (99 %) had access to amenities such as electricity, piped water, sewerage and refuse removal.

There is access to the lagoon, a yacht club, a public slipway and playground. The Fisherhaven Slipway B (Lake Marina) is a public launch site managed by a public/private entity in conjunction with the local municipality during peak seasons. A popular destination for water sports, the lagoon offers cruising, water-skiing and wakeboarding, sailing, as well as kite-, wind- and hydro-foil surfing activities.

Involvement in fisheries

According to the fisher rights registration lists, active holders include six abalone and two West Coast rock lobster (offshore). For recreational fishers, the lagoon is saltwater and treated as ocean fishing in terms of licenses.¹³⁰

Hawston

Location

The main place of Hawston is a seaside town on the southwest coast of the Western Cape (34°23'S, 19°08'E), under the jurisdiction of the Overstrand Local Municipality and Overberg District Municipality. This coastal area has a rich pre-colonial heritage where shell middens are commonly found along the coastline, evidence of the Khoisan who lived in the area over 2 000 years ago. The historical fishing village of Hawston was formally laid out in 1860 (named after commissioner Charles Haw of Caledon) and in the 1960s Hawston was proclaimed as a coloured area under the apartheid regime for forced removals from Kleinmond, Onrusrivier and Hermanus. Since the 1990s, the town has subsequently become a hotspot for abalone poaching, drugs and gangsterism due to its central position in organised poaching networks (Overstrand Municipality, 2009b). Today, Hawston is linked to violent abalone poaching and most significant abalone cartels (Norton 2014).

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Hawston had 1931 households and a population size of 8214 (1766.45 per km²), where 51 % were female and 49 % male. The town had a median age of 27 years. Most of the population identified coloured (96 %), followed by 2 % other population groups and 1 % Black African. Most residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (95 %), followed by 3 % English and 1 % other languages. For residents of the town, 2 % had no schooling, 8 % had completed their primary education, 16 % had completed their secondary education and 3 % had attained a higher education degree. The unemployment rate was 14 %, while youth (15 – 35-year-olds) unemployment was 27 %. Where employed, 20 % were formally employed, 3 % were informally employed, 4 % were employed in private households and 73 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 54 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011).

¹³⁰ See <https://hermanuswatersports.co.za/what-fish-can-you-catch-at-fisherhaven-lagoon/>

Inventory of features

The town of Hawston has fair infrastructure and basic services to cater to the primarily residential area such as smaller supermarkets, retail services, a hospice, libraries, and a primary and a secondary school. There are a few smaller café and eatery options, as well as a campsite and beach resort in the town. For administrative, municipal and other major services, residents travel to Hermanus (13 km away). According to the Census 2011 data, most residents resided in formal housing (92 %), where 64 % owned their property without bond and 6 % with bond, 24 % lived in rentals and 3 % lived in rent-free housing. All household had access to refuse removal services, while most had access to amenities such as electricity (97 %), sewerage (94 %) and piped water (91 %).

The town houses a number of historical fishing cottages and other fishing-industry related features that depict the early 20th century development of the settlement, however many of these structures are dilapidated or unused. Unlike the wealthier surrounding towns, tourism is not a major feature in Hawston, however there is the annual Hawston Sea Festival that attracts visitors to sample a variety of seafood. There is also a popular beach that attracts recreational users.¹³¹

The town has a small harbour located in a coastal inlet historically known as *Herriesbaai* with remnant historical structures such as a slipway and cleaning tables. However, due to poaching activities the harbour was closed.¹³² Currently an unproclaimed harbour, the site is seen as a key part of the economic development of the Hawston community by the local municipality, and it has been requested that it be registered as a public launch site.¹³³

Involvement in fisheries

The Hawston community relies heavily on fishing to sustain livelihoods, where fishers have traditionally depended on lagoon and marine resources for over 150 years (Overberg Municipality, 2020). The profile for small-scale fishing, particularly linked to the traditional abalone fishery, is very high in Hawston, demonstrating the important livelihood dimension of fisheries. According to the fisher rights registration lists, active holders include 179 small-scale fishers, 111 abalone, 31 traditional linefish, seven West Coast rock lobster (offshore), one hake handline, one seaweed and 1 small (sardine) pelagics.

However, this base has been eroded over time, both environmentally with the collapse of abalone stocks and socially as fisher livelihoods were severely constrained due to strict quota systems (as a result of fish stocks collapsing) (see Section 1.3.2). According to the provincial police commissioner, about 80 % of the Hawston community depended on poaching for an income in 2020. A centre of abalone poaching, Hawston is infamous for the drug and gang violence that has taken hold of the community, fuelled by high poverty and unemployment rates. With strict government fishing allocation and quota systems that have marginalised small-scale fishers, as well as a lack of facilities in poor communities such as Hawston, impoverished youth looking for ways to earn money through the lucrative black market often drown while diving for abalone.¹³⁴

Fierce competition from gangs in Cape Town also places added strain on the marine resources and local communities, where outbreaks of violence has occurred between local community members and outside gangs trying to take over lucrative abalone grounds.¹³⁵ Organised gang syndicates have also targeted children in these poor communities to participate in illegal abalone poaching with promises of fashion

¹³¹ See <https://whalecoast.info/hawston/>

¹³² See <https://www.overstrand.gov.za/en/documents/town-planning/strategic-documents-1/heritage-survey-overstrand-june-2009/1314-hawston-1/file>

¹³³ See <https://www.overstrand.gov.za/en/documents/meeting-minutes/portfolio-committee/november-2016/3884-09-item-3-p31-40-community-services-pc-agenda-nov-2016/file>

¹³⁴ See <https://www.groundup.org.za/article/fishing-communities-battle-law-and-depleted-sea/>

¹³⁵ See <https://www.iol.co.za/news/south-africa/abalone-poaching-at-root-of-war-with-gang-54341>

and drugs. Understaffed police stations and limited compliance officers in these smaller towns throughout the region are usually not able to handle the violence linked to poaching activities.¹³⁶

Greater Hermanus Urban Complex: Onrusrivier, Sandbaai and Zwelihle

The area of Greater Hermanus is situated adjacent to the main place of Hermanus in the Western Cape (34°24'44"S, 19°10'12"E), under the jurisdiction of the Overstrand Local Municipality and Overberg District Municipality. This area consists of main place Onrusrivier that is made up of sub places Vermont and Onrusrivier, as well as main place Sandbaai. As part of the Greater Hermanus urban complex, the main place of Zwelihle is also included, a substantial township located next to the New Harbour in Hermanus. These areas typically serve as satellite suburbs to the main place of Hermanus.

Demographic attributes

For each community of interest, the Census 2011 data was as follows:

		Vermont	Onrusrivier	Sandbaai	Zwelihle
General	Total Estimated Population (count)	1992	3159	4102	18210
	Population Density (count per km²)	490.64	466.62	979	8630 .33
	Number of Households (count)	866	1441	1639	6283
	Males (%)	48%	44%	46%	52%
	Females (%)	52%	56%	54%	48%
	Female Headed Households (%)	24%	37%	30%	33%
Population Age	Median Age (years)	54	60	49	26
	Under 5 years (%)	2%	1%	2%	5%
	65 years and older (%)	29%	42%	29%	1%
Population Group	Black African (%)	5%	7%	6%	95%
	Coloured (%)	4%	2%	4%	2%
	Indian/Asian (%)	0%	0%	0%	0%
	White (%)	91%	90%	89%	1%
	Other (%)	1%	0%	1%	2%
First Language	Afrikaans (%)	66%	54%	66%	4%
	English (%)	31%	38%	28%	4%
	IsiXhosa (%)	0%	1%	1%	80%
	Other (%)	2%	8%	5%	12%
Employment Status	Unemployment Rate (%)	5%	3%	3%	18%
	Youth Unemployment Rate (between 15 and 35 years old) (%)	9%	12%	9%	28%
	Formally Employed (%)	27%	28%	32%	25%

¹³⁶ See <https://www.news24.com/news24/southafrica/news/fashion-drugs-lure-kids-into-abalone-poaching-and-not-enough-cops-to-catch-the-gangsters-running-the-show-police-ombud-20191017>

		Vermont	Onrusrivier	Sandbaai	Zwelihle
	Informally Employed (%)	7%	3%	3%	5%
	Private household (%)	2%	2%	3%	8%
	Retired/unknown (%)	64%	68%	62%	63%
Families living below UBPL (Poverty Status)	Annual Household Income that is equal to or less than the UBPL (%)	21%	21%	28%	80%
	Head of Household 64 years and younger (%)	10%	9%	14%	78%
	Head of Household 65 years and older (%)	10%	17%	18%	1%
Level of Education	No Schooling (%)	1%	1%	1%	4%
	Completed Primary School (%)	1%	1%	1%	6%
	Completed Secondary School (%)	31%	32%	35%	17%
	Higher (%)	34%	39%	27%	2%

Inventory of features

Vermont is a newer development that mainly serves as a holiday village where residents are primarily second homeowners who visit the area during holiday seasons. Attractions include marine shell-midden remains from pre-colonial times, a salt pan that is frequented by flamingos, as well as a rock pool and coastal pathway.¹³⁷ Adjoining sub place Onrusrivier is an older residential area that features century-old fishermen's cottages and many of its residents work in the town of Hermanus. With a well-established artist and writing community, Onrusrivier features boutiques, coffee shops, pubs, restaurants and art galleries. The village is popular for its sandy swimming beach, a tidal pool and the lagoon.¹³⁸ Sandbaai is the most recently developed suburb and the fastest-growing residential area that houses holiday homes, a retirement village and permanent residents, featuring a popular beach.¹³⁹ All these areas cater for tourism, with a range of accommodation options and restaurants, as well as basic services such as retail and small businesses.

The densely populated settlement of Zwelihle originally began as a designated black race group area under the apartheid and today is the main township servicing the Greater Hermanus area with predominantly low to semi-skilled labour. Notably, this community had a high poverty rate of 80 % according to the Census 2011 data. The township provides basic services and is a mix of smaller and RDP housing, including informal structures. Features include primary and secondary schools, a public library, sports facilities, a government frail care facility, several crèches, a police station, doctors' rooms and a restaurant and bar.¹⁴⁰

The features for each community of interest in terms of housing and services in 2011 is detailed below (Census 2011):

		Vermont	Onrusrivier	Sandbaai	Zwelihle
Type of Dwelling	Formal (%)	98%	99%	100%	62%
	Informal/other (%)	2%	1%	0%	38%
Tenure Status	Owned and fully paid off (%)	56%	55%	43%	20%

¹³⁷ See <https://www.sa-venues.com/attractionswc/vermont.php>

¹³⁸ See <https://xplorio.com/hermanus/en/about/areas/onrus/>

¹³⁹ See <https://www.sa-venues.com/attractionswc/sandbaai.php>

¹⁴⁰ See <https://xplorio.com/hermanus/en/about/areas/zwelihle/>

		Vermont	Onrusrivier	Sandbaai	Zwelihle
	Owned but not yet paid off (%)	2%	3%	3%	14%
	Rented (%)	25%	21%	27%	59%
	Occupied rent-free (%)	15%	13%	21%	5%
Access to Amenities	Flush toilet connected to sewage and septic tank (%)	97%	99%	99%	94%
	Weekly refuse removal (%)	100%	99%	99%	97%
	Piped water inside dwelling (%)	99%	99%	99%	53%
	Electricity for lighting (%)	100%	100%	100%	79%

Involvement in fisheries

In main place Onrusrivier, there are 11 abalone, one seaweed and one traditional linefish active rights holders according to fisher registration lists. In main place Sandbaai, there are nine abalone and one West Coast rock lobster (offshore) active rights holders. Additionally, there is also a rights holder for one fish processing establishment (most likely located in one of the fishing centres along the coast) in Sandbaai. Onrusrivier features a small slipway named Harderbaai, which was requested by the local municipality to be de-registered as a public launch site. Particularly during rock lobster season, the slipway is used by fishers to launch small craft.¹⁴¹ The coastline between Vermont and Sandbaai are also very popular recreational fishing spots.

In main place Zwelihle, there are seven small-scale fishers, and four traditional linefish, three West Coast rock lobster (nearshore), two abalone, one hake longline and one West Coast rock lobster (offshore) active rights holders according to fisher registration lists.

Hermanus Urban Complex: Mount Pleasant, Hermanus and Fernkloof

The main place of Hermanus is located along Walker Bay on the southwest coast of the Western Cape (34°25'S, 19°15'E), under the jurisdiction of the Overstrand Local Municipality and Overberg District Municipality. The area has a rich history of dependence on the sea, which can be seen in the high density of stone-walled fish traps between Hermanus and Mossel Bay (Hine et al., 2010). Dating back to the 1800s when first settled by Hermanus Pieters, the village was officially named Hermanus from 1902 and due to the abundance of fish in the bay, it developed into a popular fishing village and tourist destination.¹⁴²

Tourism is a main contributor to the economy of Hermanus with numerous businesses catering for the hospitality industry. Hermanus is famously known as the best land-based whale watching destination in the world and attracts thousands of local and international tourists from June through to December. Hermanus is also a leader in commercial abalone farming, where the development of aquaculture farms is prioritised by the district municipality. Other key local economic contributors include agriculture, manufacturing, wholesale and retail businesses, financial and investment companies and the wine industry (Overberg Municipality, 2020). Our communities of interest include sub places Mount Pleasant, Hermanus (including Westdene) and Fernkloof.

¹⁴¹ See <https://xplorio.com/hermanus/en/about/areas/onrus/>

¹⁴² See <https://xplorio.com/hermanus/>

Demographic attributes

For each community of interest, the Census 2011 data was as follows:

		Mount Pleasant	Hermanus (including Westdene)	Fernkloof
General	Total Estimated Population (count)	4847	4309	114
	Population Density (count per km ²)	6214 .10	461 .84	78 .62
	Number of Households (count)	932	1627	47
	Males (%)	48%	44%	44%
	Females (%)	52%	56%	55%
	Female Headed Households (%)	38%	40%	19%
Population Age	Median Age (years)	26	56	60
	Under 5 years (%)	4%	1%	2%
	65 years and older (%)	4%	36%	31%
Population Group	Black African (%)	3%	14%	0%
	Coloured (%)	95%	6%	2%
	Indian/Asian (%)	0%	1%	0%
	White (%)	0%	78%	97%
	Other (%)	1%	1%	0%
First Language	Afrikaans (%)	94%	41%	46%
	English (%)	3%	31%	54%
	IsiXhosa (%)	0%	1%	0%
	Other (%)	2%	27%	0%
Employment Status	Unemployment Rate (%)	10%	2%	0%
	Youth Unemployment Rate (between 15 and 35 years old) (%)	20%	4%	0%
	Formally Employed (%)	31%	23%	30%
	Informally Employed (%)	3%	3%	0%
	Private household (%)	5%	3%	3%
	Retired/unknown (%)	61%	71%	68%
Families living below UBPL (Poverty Status)	Annual Household Income that is equal to or less than the UBPL (%)	71%	21%	15%
	Head of Household 64 years and younger (%)	41%	8%	12%
	Head of Household 65 years and older (%)	5%	13%	6%
Level of Education	No Schooling (%)	3%	1%	0%
	Completed Primary School (%)	7%	1%	0%

		Mount Pleasant	Hermanus (including Westdene)	Fernkloof
	Completed Secondary School (%)	15%	25%	24%
	Higher (%)	1%	27%	51%

Under the Group Areas Act of the apartheid, Hermanus was declared a white area in the 1950s and the coloured community was forcibly removed from the central business district to either Mount Pleasant or further afield to Hawston (13 km away). These historical segregation policies determine the settlement pattern of the town today.¹⁴³

Inventory of features

Hermanus is the largest town in the Overberg District Municipality and serves as the regional office for the district municipality and head office for local municipality. Hermanus has a well-developed industrial area where the building sector has expanded substantially over the last decade with security villages, private homes, holiday resorts and commercial and retail property development projects (Overberg Municipality, 2020). The town is an important commercial, retirement, tourist and cultural centre, where the formal business area and wealthier suburbs have modern infrastructure, sophisticated specialty shops (including fishing sport and tackle¹⁴⁴), expanded medical care facilities, a shopping mall, retirement villages, law enforcement and education services.

The features for each community of interest in terms of housing and services in 2011 is detailed below (Census 2011):

		Mount Pleasant	Hermanus (including Westdene)	Fernkloof
Type of Dwelling	Formal (%)	96%	100%	98%
	Informal/other (%)	4%	0%	2%
Tenure Status	Owned and fully paid off (%)	74%	47%	70%
	Owned but not yet paid off (%)	0%	4%	0%
	Rented (%)	20%	33%	2%
	Occupied rent-free (%)	6%	14%	21%
Access to Amenities	Flush toilet connected to sewage and septic tank (%)	96%	100%	100%
	Weekly refuse removal (%)	100%	100%	100%
	Piped water inside dwelling (%)	88%	95%	100%
	Electricity for lighting (%)	98%	100%	100%

There are numerous seafood restaurants, based both in the town and along the harbour fronts. There is more than a 100 accommodation options ranging from up-scale bed and breakfasts, guesthouses, luxury resorts and boutique hotels to budget priced self-catering and back-packer establishments. Hermanus Lagoon houses the Hermanus Yacht Club, started in 1950 and today hosts regattas and high-profile events such as the 420 National Championships.¹⁴⁵

¹⁴³ See <https://www.hermanus-history-society.co.za/2020/06/18/the-legacy-of-segregation-in-hermanus/>

¹⁴⁴ See <https://www.facebook.com/Hermanus-Sport-Tackle-262195594363047/>

¹⁴⁵ See <https://www.hyc.co.za>

The original town centre has retained its fishing village heritage features and serves as an international tourist hub for the area, specifically catering to whale watching activities, with a dedicated tourist bureau.¹⁴⁶ The original harbour, referred to as the Old Harbour and is a Provincial Heritage site, now houses the Old Harbour Museum that showcases the old fishing village. There are also more than 45 galleries display arts and crafts throughout the town. Hermanus hosts the only eco-marine festival in South Africa, the Hermanus Whale Festival, which takes place annually.¹⁴⁷

While the Old Harbour is used for tourist activities such as land-based whale watching and show casing the historical fishing village and contemporary artwork, the New Harbour is an active fishing harbour that was built in the 1920s when the Old Harbour could no longer support the high number of fishing boats. The New Harbour is a proclaimed harbour with a variety of land uses such as light industry linked to intensive marine product processing from aquaculture products,¹⁴⁸ as well as tourism and recreational uses (DAFF, 2015). The New Harbour is the departure point for whale watching boat trips, where tourists are offered close encounters with Southern Right Whales as well as other marine life such as dolphins, seals, penguins and a variety of seabirds.¹⁴⁹ There is a skiboat club¹⁵⁰, diving school and mixed commercial activities such as restaurants, a seafood retail shop and art gallery. The harbour serves as a rescue base and Pink Rescue Buoy placement for the NSRI (NSRI, 2020) and houses a Fisheries Compliance Office that services the harbour as well as the surrounding areas.

The New Harbour has a harbour master and the infrastructure includes (DAFF, 2015):

- Three concrete quays
- Crane (3.5-tonne scotch derrick crane)
- Mooring
- Slipway (one main 90-tonne slipway)
- Boat Ramps (10 m wide boat ramp is available for public use)
- A prepaid electricity power box in the boat repair area
- Fish cleaning shed (including cleaning tables)

Involvement in fisheries

The New Harbour is active with fishing activities throughout the year, with peak seasons in August/September and November/December. In peak season, the harbour received an average of 10 boats per day and the common species landed include lobster (in season) and linefish (all year round). In terms of fishing activities, the harbour is used for recreational and commercial fishing, as well as by small-scale and/or subsistence fishers from local communities. Part of the objectives of development in this harbour is to support community-based small scale fishing operations (DAFF, 2015).

In main place Hermanus (consisting of Mount Pleasant, Hermanus and Fernkloof), there are 31 abalone, five traditional linefish, four West Coast rock lobster (offshore), three small (sardine) pelagics, one horse mackerel and one tuna pole active rights holders according to fisher registration lists. There are six rights holders for fish processing establishments. According to the Western Cape Registration and Verification Results rights holders list, there are 38 small-scale fishers registered in Mount Pleasant and 11 small-scale fishers registered in Westdene.

Gansbaai Urban Complex: Gansbaai, van Dyksbaai and Franskraal

Location

The main place of Gansbaai is located on the southwest coast of the Western Cape (34°34'58"S, 19°21'8"E), under the jurisdiction of the Overstrand Local Municipality and Overberg District Municipality. The area has a rich pre-colonial history, where archaeological evidence has been found

¹⁴⁶ See <https://hermanus-tourism.co.za>

¹⁴⁷ See <http://hermanuswhalefestival.co.za>

¹⁴⁸ See <https://www.hermanus.co.za/where-to-buy/farms-a-exports/abalone-a-fisheries>

¹⁴⁹ See <https://www.hermanusonline.mobi/hermanus-activities/whale-watching-marine-big-5-trip>

¹⁵⁰ See <https://wbbsbc.co.za>

in Klipgat Cave of early modern man from about 80 000 years ago, as well as the Khoisan around 2 000 years ago. Klipgat Cave is now an important historical site in the Western Cape. European settlers started to develop the fishing village of Gansbaai from the 1880s, which remained rural and isolated until the 1940s when a factory was built to process shark livers that the town began to develop.¹⁵¹

In 1952, the Gansbaai Fishing Co-op was formed and formalised fishing trade for the town, followed by the establishment of the fish meal factory. In the 1960s, the fishing industry in Gansbaai grew into a multi-million-rand operation as sardine catches increased substantially on the southwest coast after becoming less abundant in the St Helena Bay area. However, the harbour only accommodates smaller vessels than those base in St Helena Bay. Today, the fishing industry is still an important feature in Gansbaai (e.g., Ragaller, 2012) and still regarded as the primary industry and employment generator.¹⁵² Tourism also plays a key role in the towns economy, where Gansbaai has been world renowned for shark cage diving and features such as Dyer Island with its African Penguin colony.¹⁵³

For the main place of Gansbaai, our communities of interest include sub places De Kelders and Gansbaai (including Blompark and Masakhane). As part of the Gansbaai urban complex, the main places of van Dyksbaai (including Kleinbaai) and Franskraal are included as beach suburbs.

Demographic attributes

For each community of interest, the Census 2011 data was as follows:

		De Kelders	Gansbaai (Blompark & Masakhane)	Van Dyksbaai	Franskraal
General	Total Estimated Population (count)	1070	10523	500	1165
	Population Density (count per km ²)	104 .80	4718 .83	175 .44	466 .00
	Number of Households (count)	507	3284	261	592
	Males (%)	48%	51%	44%	47%
	Females (%)	53%	49%	56%	53%
	Female Headed Households (%)	30%	32%	31%	22%
Population Age	Median Age (years)	58	27	58	61
	Under 5 years (%)	1%	4%	4%	1%
	65 years and older (%)	32%	4%	32%	38%
Population Group	Black African (%)	2%	50%	5%	3%
	Coloured (%)	2%	32%	3%	2%
	Indian/Asian (%)	0%	0%	0%	0%
	White (%)	95%	17%	92%	95%
	Other (%)	0%	0%	0%	0%
First Language	Afrikaans (%)	83%	48%	91%	88%
	English (%)	12%	2%	9%	10%

¹⁵¹ See <https://xplorio.com/gansbaai/>

¹⁵² See <https://xplorio.com/gansbaai/en/about/history/>

¹⁵³ See <https://dict.org.za>

		De Kelders	Gansbaai (Blompark & Masakhane)	Van Dyksbaai	Franskraal
	IsiXhosa (%)	0%	42%	0%	1%
	Other (%)	4%	7%	1%	0%
Employment Status	Unemployment Rate (%)	4%	15%	4%	4%
	Youth Unemployment Rate (between 15 and 35 years old) (%)	11%	26%	11%	20%
	Formally Employed (%)	24%	22%	22%	15%
	Informally Employed (%)	3%	7%	1%	3%
	Private household (%)	4%	4%	2%	2%
	Retired/unknown (%)	69%	67%	75%	80%
Families living below UBPL (Poverty Status)	Annual Household Income that is equal to or less than the UBPL (%)	13%	70%	9%	23%
	Head of Household 64 years and younger (%)	9%	64%	11%	14%
	Head of Household 65 years and older (%)	12%	5%	7%	20%
Level of Education	No Schooling (%)	0%	3%	1%	1%
	Completed Primary School (%)	1%	6%	1%	1%
	Completed Secondary School (%)	34%	16%	37%	44%
	Higher (%)	26%	2%	29%	17%

The majority of the resident population in sub place Gansbaai are typically poorer than the more affluent beach suburbs of De Kelders, van Dyksbaai (Kleinbaai) and Franskraal. The sub place of Gansbaai has three distinct demographic areas based on historical apartheid spatial inequalities – Blompark (coloured), Masakhane (Black African) and Gansbaai proper (white). Gansbaai had a high poverty of 70 % in 2011, where the crime rate is fairly high and rivalry for limited work in the area has caused rifts between the different demographic communities (Norton, 2014). Due to historical inequalities, coloured and black communities provide cheap labour to both fishing and tourism industries (Ragaller, 2012). In contrast, the beach suburbs are frequented by wealthy holidaymakers or second homeowners, where permanent residents are predominately white and typically wealthy retirees.

Inventory of features

Gansbaai is the business and industrial centre for the wider farming and fishing community in the area. While the main commercial activity is fishing, other marine-based industries such as abalone farms are also prominent features.¹⁵⁴ The town of Gansbaai has good infrastructure with specialty shops (including fishing tackle¹⁵⁵), retail services, supermarkets, law enforcement services, local municipal services and education facilities. Gansbaai serves as the services centre for the beach suburbs of De Kelders, van Dyksbaai (including Kleinbaai) and Franskraal, including Pearly Beach that is located 20 km away.

The features for each community of interest in terms of housing and services in 2011 is detailed below (Census 2011):

¹⁵⁴ See <https://www.aqunion.com>

¹⁵⁵ See <https://xplorio.com/gansbaai/fish-fever/>

		De Kelders	Gansbaai (Blompark & Masakhane)	Van Dyksbaai	Franskraal
Type of Dwelling	Formal (%)	99%	59%	99%	99%
	Informal/other (%)	1%	41%	1%	1%
Tenure Status	Owned and fully paid off (%)	55%	50%	61%	59%
	Owned but not yet paid off (%)	5%	29%	11%	5%
	Rented (%)	25%	14%	18%	21%
	Occupied rent-free (%)	15%	7%	8%	14%
Access to Amenities	Flush toilet connected to sewage and septic tank (%)	100%	84%	99%	98%
	Weekly refuse removal (%)	100%	89%	87%	99%
	Piped water inside dwelling (%)	100%	57%	98%	98%
	Electricity for lighting (%)	98%	96%	99%	100%

As a popular tourist destination with an established tourism bureau, the area has numerous accommodation options ranging from a luxury lodge to self-catering and bed and breakfast options, as well as caravan parks. There are also many restaurant options available, including seafood establishments. The beaches in the area are a popular attraction and the coastline is used for surfing, diving, swimming and recreational fishing. *Fees van die Ganse* (or *Gansfees*) is held annually in Gansbaai, a festival that focuses on the origins of the town and includes boat trips.

Gansbaai also has a proclaimed harbour, comprising of an old harbour that houses light industrial processing facilities for fish and seafood products and a new harbour. The harbour has a harbour master and a Fisheries Compliance Office that serves the surrounding area. The harbour is used by local small-scale fishers, large commercial fishing businesses and for recreational fishing activities (DAFF, 2015). Infrastructure at the Gansbaai harbour includes:

- Five concrete quays
- Crane (7.5-tonne fixed crane)
- Mooring (10 trot moorings is available in new harbour)
- Slipways (80-tonne 2-rail slip 50 m long and a 9 m side slip with separate carriage)
- Boat Ramps (a concrete boat ramp adjacent to slipway in the old harbour)

In the wider area, there is a public launch site for smaller vessels in van Dyksbaai called Kleinbaai Boat launching Site. This is managed by the local municipality and is the base for the shark diving industry. There is also the Blousloep slipway in Franskraal, historically managed by a partnership between the Overstrand Municipality and the Franskraal Boat Club; however, this was recommended to be de-registered as a public launch site by the local municipality.¹⁵⁶

Involvement in fisheries

Gansbaai is the regional fishing centre on southwest coast due to the small pelagic fish processing factory, with a fleet of small purse-seine vessels that target sardine and anchovy locally. In Gansbaai, there are 24 abalone, 20 traditional linefish, 16 small-scale fishers (Blompark), 7 small-scale fishers (Masakhane), two hake handline, two oyster, two small (anchovy and sardine) pelagics, two West Coast rock lobster (offshore), one hake deep sea trawl, one hake inshore trawl (hake and sole), one 1 hake longline, one horse mackerel, one large pelagics and one tuna pole active rights holders according to

¹⁵⁶ See <https://www.overstrand.gov.za/en/documents/meeting-minutes/portfolio-committee/november-2016/3884-09-item-3-p31-40-community-services-pc-agenda-nov-2016/file>

fisher registration lists. There are six active rights holders for fish processing establishments. In neighbouring Franskraal, there is one abalone rights holder.

Gansbaai fishers historically targeted a number of fish species, but this has been limited due to strict quotas and regulations placed on fisheries. For the fishing community in Gansbaai, fishing forms an important part of their identity and sense of place; however, the enforcement of quota systems has eroded their livelihoods (Ragaller, 2012). Many local small-scale fishers have struggled to get rights to fish and those who managed to near-shore rights provide work on their boats to fishers who were not granted permits.¹⁵⁷ Gansbaai is the hub in the illegal international trade of poached abalone, which is typically violent and where anti-poaching efforts use military tactics. The easily accessible, vast shoreline and dense kelp forests make this coastline challenging to control illegal diving activities and with the collapse of the abalone fishery (see Section 1.3.2), this has fuelled competition over this scarce resource (Norton, 2014).

The area attracts a large number of visitors during holiday seasons, where a significant portion of these use the Gansbaai harbour facilities to launch skiboats for recreational fishing. There are a number of angling clubs¹⁵⁸ that are active in the area and competitions are held regularly, stretching from Kleinmond to Still Bay. For example, the Overberg Boat Angling Club¹⁵⁹ that is based out of Gansbaai/Kleinbaai takes part in Western Province Deep Sea Angling Association¹⁶⁰ (WPDSAA) competitions for offshore leagues. The sport of gamefish angling is an important recreational and social activity where WPDSAA follows the angling rules and regulations of the International Game Fish Association (IGFA).

Pearly Beach

Location

The main place of Pearly Beach is located on the southwest coast of the Western Cape (34.665°S, 19.501°E), under the jurisdiction of the Overstrand Local Municipality and Overberg District Municipality. The area has a rich pre-colonial history, with archaeological features such as open station shell middens (Avery, 1974). A traditional seaside holiday village dating back to the 1920s, the village still serves mainly as a second home holiday destination, as well as a retirement community.¹⁶¹ For the main place of Pearly Beach, our communities of interest include the sub places of Pearly Beach and Eluxolweni.

Demographic attributes

For each community of interest, the Census 2011 data was as follows:

		Pearly Beach	Eluxolweni
General	Total Estimated Population (count)	429	614
	Population Density (count per km ²)	156	2923.81
	Number of Households (count)	235	250
	Males (%)	48%	63%
	Females (%)	52%	37%

¹⁵⁷ See <https://www.masifundise.org/gansbaai-history-natural-beauty-and-fisher-struggles>

¹⁵⁸ For example, Birkenhead Boothengelklub has been established in Gansbaai since 1988, where this fishing club promotes fishing activities for angling, boating and ocean enthusiasts.

¹⁵⁹ See <https://nautitechsuzuki.com/overberg-boat-club/>

¹⁶⁰ See <https://www.wpdtaa.co.za>

¹⁶¹ See <https://xplorio.com/gansbaai/en/about/areas/pearly-beach/>

		Pearly Beach	Eluxolweni
	Female Headed Households (%)	31%	24%
Population Age	Median Age (years)	63	25
	Under 5 years (%)	1%	3%
	65 years and older (%)	40%	1%
Population Group	Black African (%)	2%	80%
	Coloured (%)	2%	19%
	Indian/Asian (%)	0%	0%
	White (%)	94%	1%
	Other (%)	2%	0%
First Language	Afrikaans (%)	77%	23%
	English (%)	21%	1%
	IsiXhosa (%)	1%	74%
	Other (%)	1%	1%
Employment Status	Unemployment Rate (%)	3%	27%
	Youth Unemployment Rate (between 15 and 35 years old) (%)	20%	37%
	Formally Employed (%)	18%	34%
	Informally Employed (%)	2%	6%
	Private household (%)	4%	2%
	Retired/unknown (%)	76%	58%
Families living below UBPL (Poverty Status)	Annual Household Income that is equal to or less than the UBPL (%)	19%	73%
	Head of Household 64 years and younger (%)	17%	90%
	Head of Household 65 years and older (%)	17%	1%
Level of Education	No Schooling (%)	1%	5%
	Completed Primary School (%)	1%	8%
	Completed Secondary School (%)	40%	9%
	Higher (%)	28%	1%

Stemming from the apartheid era, the town is divided between the wealthier, formalised suburbs with largely white residents (Pearly Beach) and a poor, informal township area where predominately people of colour reside (Eluxolweni). The settlement of Eluxolweni is characterised by high poverty rates and high unemployment, particularly amongst the youth.

Inventory of features

In the sub place of Pearly Beach, there are a variety of specialty shops and the old petrol station and former *Afsaal Kaffee* have both been upgraded to form part of the now privatised Pearly Beach Resort. For large retail, business, municipal and education services residents travel to Gansbaai (20 km away). As a popular holiday destination, there is a selection of small restaurants and pubs, guesthouses and bed and breakfasts.

The features for each community of interest in terms of housing and services in 2011 is detailed below (Census 2011):

		Pearly Beach	Eluxolweni
Type of Dwelling	Formal (%)	97%	44%
	Informal/other (%)	3%	56%
Tenure Status	Owned and fully paid off (%)	64%	14%
	Owned but not yet paid off (%)	6%	47%
	Rented (%)	17%	32%
	Occupied rent-free (%)	12%	4%
Access to Amenities	Flush toilet connected to sewage and septic tank (%)	100%	76%
	Weekly refuse removal (%)	92%	67%
	Piped water inside dwelling (%)	100%	26%
	Electricity for lighting (%)	100%	31%

The Blue Water Bay slipway is located at Pearly Beach; however, this was recommended to be de-registered as a public launch site by the local municipality. The management of this slipway was historically on a lease agreement between the Overstrand Municipality and the Pearly Beach Boat Club.¹⁶²

Involvement in fisheries

According to the fisher rights registration lists, there are five abalone and two West Coast rock lobster (offshore) active rights holders. The importance of fishing activities in this town is highlighted through the 55 small-scale fishers registered in the town according to the Western Cape Registration and Verification Results rights holders list. Recreational fishing activities are very popular, specifically angling, where official angling competitions held on a regular basis form part of the community's strong social character.

Buffeljagsbaai

Location

The small settlement of Buffeljagsbaai is situated on the coast between Pearly Beach and Quoin Point (34°44' 43.9''S, 19°36' 11.8''E), approximately 35 km from Gansbaai. There was a 19th century fishing settlement in this area where housing material was used from salvaged shipwrecks – a frequent occurrence along this coast, particularly in the 19th and 20th centuries. There is evidence of a Khoisan midden near the present-day harbour area that may have been used as a shellfish collection site much earlier than the 19th century. The Buffeljags families who settled to form a permanent community from

¹⁶² See <https://www.overstrand.gov.za/en/documents/meeting-minutes/portfolio-committee/november-2016/3884-09-item-3-p31-40-community-services-pc-agenda-nov-2016/file>

the 1920s had earlier links to the area, as men regularly travelled down to the small, sheltered harbour of Buffeljagsbaai from Elim (or even Hermanus) to fish and then return to sell their catch. As this travel was done via donkey cart or bicycle, these original fishers built themselves makeshift shelters close to the water, which later became permanent residences once they married women predominately from Elim or Bredasdorp. Buffeljagsbaai's historic links to Elim persist today, where fishers who live in Elim still travel down to fish at the harbour (30 km away), returning to sell the catch to their communities, or camping there during their holidays or on weekends (Overstrand Municipality, 2009c).

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Buffeljagsbaai had 114 households and a population size of 473 (3.00 per km²), where 54 % were male and 46 % female. The village had a median age of 30 years. Most of the population identified as coloured (81 %), followed by 10 % Black African, 7 % white and 1 % other population. Most residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (96 %), followed by 3 % isiXhosa and 2 % English. For residents of the town, 4 % had no schooling, 8 % had primary education, 14 % had completed their secondary education and 2 % had attained a higher education degree. The unemployment rate was 15 %, while youth (15 – 35-year-olds) unemployment was 34 %. Where employed, 16 % were formally employed, 4 % were informally employed, 4 % were employed in a private household and 75 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 77 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011).

The residents of Buffeljagsbaai are historically linked to labourers who worked on farms in Elim or as hired crewmen on local fishing vessels, as well as a white family who lived in the settlement from the 1940s. The community, both coloured and white residents, made their living off the sea and this tradition still continues today. Fishers used traditional hand-line fishing methods, also traditionally harvesting abalone and lobster. This way of life has become increasingly difficult to maintain with the imposition of fishing quotas, the removal and re-issuing of fishing permits to commercial fishers in Buffeljags and the implementation of bans on the harvesting of some species, such as abalone (Overstrand Municipality, 2009c). In 2000, a poverty alleviation grant of R1.4 million from the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism's Coastcare Project in 2000 coupled with an investment of the same amount from I&J's¹⁶³ corporate social development programme introduced some alternative income generating projects for the community aimed at reducing poverty and reliance on marine resources (to mitigate poaching). More recently, the women of the village made small crafts and local food delicacies such as pickled *alikeukels* (giant periwinkle) that were sold at markets in Gansbaai and Hermanus.¹⁶⁴

Inventory of features

Buffeljagsbaai is a rural, isolated settlement with no supermarkets, banking facilities, schools, entertainment or health care facilities. In 2009, the dwellings consisted of a few wooden houses – a variety of structures including some RDP houses and an old wooden house made of shipwreck timber, a caravan park /campsite, church, and three groups of houses near the harbour. According to the Census 2011 data, 86 % of residents resided in formal dwellings, where 53 % owned their property with no bond and 5 % with a bond, 25 % lived in rentals and 15 % lived in rent-free housing. Most residents had access to electricity (95 %), a flush toilet with a formal sewerage system (89 %), piped water within their homes (75 %) and weekly refuse removal services (69 %).

More recently, the Buffeljags Abalone Farm was set up near Buffeljagsbaai in 2018 under Viking Aquaculture, a member of the Sea Harvest group.¹⁶⁵ There is a public launch site called *Buffeljachtsbaai* located at the harbour, which is used by local fishers and managed by the local municipality during peak times – where a fishery control officer is also present to inspect landings.¹⁶⁶

¹⁶³ See <https://www.ij.co.za>

¹⁶⁴ See <https://www.iol.co.za/travel/south-africa/western-cape/eat-with-sarah-in-buffelsjagbaai-1321089>

¹⁶⁵ See <http://www.vikingaquaculture.co.za/abalone/farming/>

¹⁶⁶ See <https://www.masifundise.org/buffeljagsbaai-fishers-host-eastern-cape-delegation/>

Involvement in fisheries

According to the Western Cape Registration and Verification Results rights holders list, there are 47 small-scale fishers registered in the village. Other rights holders who engage in fishing activities in Buffeljagsbaai include 15 abalone, four West Coast rock lobster (nearshore) and two traditional linefish rights holders.

3.2.3. Cape Agulhas Local Municipality

The Cape Agulhas Local Municipality is the southernmost municipality in Africa that also contains the southernmost town – Agulhas. Its coastline is surrounded by the Atlantic and Indian oceans and the area has a number of small fishing communities. Agricultural activities include wheat production and stock farming (Overberg Municipality, 2020). While fishing has been identified as a key sector for the development of the local economy, the steady decline due to reduced stocks and quotas was noted as an overall drawback by the local municipality (Cape Agulhas Municipality, 2017).

Elim

Location

The main place of Elim is located 30km inland from the coast of the Western Cape (34°35'30"S, 19°45'30"E), under the jurisdiction of the Cape Agulhas Local Municipality and Overberg District Municipality. The village was established by German missionaries in 1824, where many freed slaves settled in the 1800s. The town is characterised by thatched cottages, where thatchers in this area remain internationally renowned. The local economy in the area is best known for the export of fynbos and the production of wine.¹⁶⁷

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Elim had 390 households and a population size of 1412 (49.84 per km²), where 52 % were female and 48 % male. The town had a median age of 31 years. Most of the population identified as coloured (92 %), followed by 7 % Black African and 1 % white. Most residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (82 %), followed by 14 % other languages and 3 % English. For residents of the town, 7 % had primary education, 11 % had completed their secondary education and 6 % had attained a higher education degree. The unemployment rate was 14 %, while youth (15 – 35-year-olds) unemployment was 23 %. Where employed, 20 % were formally employed, 3 % were informally employed and 77 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 57 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011). As there are limited employment opportunities within the village, many local people work in larger urban centres such as Cape Town (about 180 km away) but return to Elim for holidays and celebratory events.¹⁶⁸

Inventory of features

The village remains a working mission controlled by the Moravian church with small tourist activities such as a heritage centre, accompanying national monuments and two guest houses. According to the Census 2011 data, all residents resided in formal housing, where 73 % owned their property without bond and 1 % with bond, 17 % lived in rentals and 7 % lived in rent-free housing. Most households had access to amenities such as refuse removal (98 %), sewerage (99 %), electricity (97 %) and piped water (71 %).

Involvement in fisheries

The community in Elim is historically linked to Quoin Point and its shipwrecks – where the Moravian mission village is located 30 km inland. The residents of Elim often assisted victims of shipwrecks at Quoin Point, dating back to the 19th century and after the assistance at the wrecking of the Jessie in 1829, the colonial government granted the Elim missionaries the right to use the land at Quoin Point. Given a more frequent presence of fishers on the coast, the Elim community continued to assist with

¹⁶⁷ See <https://xplorio.com/gansbaai/en/about/gansbaai-surrounds/elim-mission-station/>

¹⁶⁸ See <https://www.roxannereid.co.za/blog/why-to-visit-the-moravian-village-of-elim-western-cape>

shipwrecks into the 20th century. Today at Quoin Point there is a small light-tower surrounded by some cottages owned by the Schipper- and October-families of Elim.¹⁶⁹ The Elim community also has strong historical links to Buffeljagsbaai where the current fishing activities take place there, as described in the Buffeljagsbaai section.

According to the fisher rights registration lists, there are 18 small-scale fishers and one traditional linefish active rights holders. There are also fishing businesses registered in Elim – for example, the Elim Fishing Community and Elim Small Scale Fishing Primary Co-operative.¹⁷⁰

Suiderstrand

Location

The main place of Suiderstrand is located on the coast near the southern tip of Africa in the Western Cape (34°48'54"S 19°57'29"E), under the jurisdiction of the Cape Agulhas Local Municipality and Overberg District Municipality. *Suiderstrand* means “Southern Beach” in Afrikaans and is a coastal village surrounded by pristine beaches and the Agulhas National Park, a popular drawcard for tourism and other marine-related recreational activities.¹⁷¹

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Suiderstrand had 23 households and a population size of 44 (31.88 per km²), where 52 % were female and 48 % male. The town had a median age of 60 years. Most of the population identified white (93 %), followed by 7 % Black African. Most residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (89 %), followed by 11 % English. For residents of the town, 27 % had completed their secondary education and 40 % had attained a higher education degree. The unemployment rate was 14 % (with no youth unemployment). Where employed, 29 % were formally employed, 7 % were employed in private households and 64 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 17 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011).

Inventory of features

This town was developed as a small coastal retirement and second home area, where it relies on neighbouring towns (such as Struisbaai that is 10 km away) for retail, education and administrative services (Cape Agulhas Municipality, 2017). This little seaside town is best known for its white sandy beaches and is a popular tourist destination with a few holiday chalets and self-catering unit available, serving as a gateway to the Agulhas National Park.¹⁷² According to the Census 2011 data, most residents resided in formal housing (96 %), where 43 % owned their property without bond and 39 % with bond, 9 % lived in rent-free housing and 4 % lived in rentals. All households had access to amenities such as refuse removal, sewerage and piped water, while 88 % had access to electricity.

Involvement in fisheries

There are well-preserved tidal fish traps in Suiderstrand and shell middens in the area dating back to the pre-colonial area. The fishing grounds are popular amongst local and recreational fishers.¹⁷³ There is a public launch site located in Suiderstrand that is managed by the local municipality and is the only public boat launch site that falls in the Cape Agulhas Local Municipality (Cape Agulhas Municipality, 2017).

¹⁶⁹ See <https://whalecoast.info/quoin-point-shipwrecks/>

¹⁷⁰ See <https://b2bhint.com/en/company/za/elim-small-scale-fishing-primary-co-operative-limited--C2020005107>

¹⁷¹ See <https://xplorio.com/agulhas/en/about/areas/suiderstrand/>

¹⁷² See <https://www.sanparks.org/parks/agulhas/>

¹⁷³ See <https://www.sanparks.org/docs/parks-agulhas/october.pdf>

L'Agulhas

Location

The main place of L'Agulhas is located on the coast near the southern tip of Africa in the Western Cape (34°48'54"S 19°57'29"E), under the jurisdiction of the Cape Agulhas Local Municipality and Overberg District Municipality. Fish traps are found along the shoreline of the town and the area is best known for shipwrecks that are concentrated around this most southern tip of Africa.¹⁷⁴ Today, the coastal settlement is mainly reliant on tourism, as it serves as the gateway to the Agulhas National Park¹⁷⁵ and the Cape Agulhas Lighthouse, which is a provincial heritage site and the second-oldest lighthouse in the country (Cape Agulhas Municipality, 2017). The town also serves as a retirement village.

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, L'Agulhas had 251 households and a population size of 543 (72.50 per km²), where 55 % were female and 44 % male. The town had a median age of 60 years. Most of the population identified as white (86 %), followed by 7 % Black African, 5 % coloured and 2 % other population. Most residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (78 %), followed by 16 % English and 6 % other languages. For residents of the town, 2 % had primary education, 25 % had completed their secondary education and 41 % had attained a higher education degree. The unemployment rate was low at 2 % with no youth (15 – 35-year-olds) unemployment. Where employed, 20 % were formally employed, 3 % were informally employed, 3 % were employed in a private household and 74 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 14 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011).

Inventory of features

There infrastructure services of the town are in good condition and there are basic retail and shopping services (including the fishing store *Suidpunt Sinkers*) in the town. However, most administrative, municipal, retail, business and education services are in larger centres such as Struisbaai (5 km away) or Bredasdorp (35 km away)). According to the Census 2011 data, all residents resided in formal housing, where 71 % owned their property without bond and 6 % with bond, 18 % lived in rentals and 3 % lived in rent-free housing. All households had access to amenities such as refuse removal and sewerage, while most had access to electricity (99 %) and piped water (99 %).

As a popular tourist and weekend-away destination, L'Agulhas has numerous accommodation options, largely self-catering and bed and breakfast options. There is also a variety of restaurant and café options, including seafood eateries. The Cape Agulhas Lighthouse serves as a museum that showcases the history of the area in relation to the sea, including the fish traps.¹⁷⁶ L'Agulhas serves as a rescue base and Pink Rescue Buoy placement for the NSRI (NSRI, 2020).

Involvement in fisheries

The community has a historic connection to the sea that is linked to the 150 shipwrecks found within the area. The annual Southern Tip Day L'Agulhas Street Festival pays tribute to the shipwrecks and sailors who lost their lives at sea, dating back to the 1600s. The area is popular for recreational fishing activities, particularly over the holiday periods. According to the fisher rights registration lists, there is one active traditional linefish rights holder registered in the town.

Struisbaai

Location

The main place of Struisbaai is located on the coast near the southern tip of Africa in the Western Cape (34°48'16"S, 20°03'27"E), under the jurisdiction of the Cape Agulhas Local Municipality and Overberg District Municipality. The town is best known as an old fishing village with a natural harbour that was

¹⁷⁴ See <https://xplorio.com/agulhas/en/about/history/>

¹⁷⁵ See <https://www.sanparks.org/parks/agulhas/>

¹⁷⁶ See <https://www.sa-venues.com/things-to-do/westerncape/cape-agulhas-lighthouse-museum/>

developed in 1959, where the tidal fish traps used by nomadic Khoisan are still in use. In the 1900s, commercial sea companies such as Sea Harvest and I&J were active in the Struisbaai harbour and owned all the boats operating out of the harbour, where the community worked for these companies as crew. These large companies scaled down and moved out of Struisbaai by the 1970s, leaving the fishing community to work for a businessman who purchased most of the company boats, which were then leased or sold to local fishers in subsequent years (Parker, 2013). Today, while fishing still forms an important part of the permanent community, the town has grown to the largest coastal settlement in the Cape Agulhas Municipality area and is a sought-after retirement and second home area, as well as a popular holiday destination (Cape Agulhas Municipality, 2017).

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Struisbaai had 1450 households and a population size of 3867 (269.67 per km²), where 52 % were female and 48 % male. The town had a median age of 36 years. Half of the population identified as coloured (50 %), followed by 35 % white, 13 % Black African and 1 % other population. Most residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (85 %), followed by 9 % English, 3 % isiXhosa and 3 % other languages. For residents of the town, 2 % had no schooling, 9 % had primary education, 22 % had completed their secondary education and 11 % had attained a higher education degree. The unemployment rate was 10 %, while youth (15 – 35-year-olds) unemployment was 22 %. Where employed, 23 % were formally employed, 5 % were informally employed, 6 % were employed in a private household and 67 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 54 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011).

Inventory of features

The town has numerous services that also cater for smaller coastal villages such as L'Agulhas (5 km away) that include shopping, banking, postal, traffic and law enforcement, religious, public library and other facilities. Small marine businesses are also present, for example *Suidpunt Marine* that serves as a marine supply store. The local municipality noted that water sources are increasingly under pressure in Struisbaai due to numerous residential developments and holidaymakers (Cape Agulhas Municipality, 2017). According to the Census 2011 data, most residents resided in formal housing (86 %), where 68 % owned their property without bond and 8 % with bond, 17 % lived in rentals and 5 % lived in rent-free housing. Most households had access to amenities such as electricity (99 %), refuse removal (99 %), sewerage (98 %) and piped water (84 %).

Struisbaai is one of the smaller proclaimed harbours in South Africa, where it contains fishery compliance management facilities, a harbour master, boat servicing areas and parking areas, where smaller commercial activities (such as seafood restaurants and cafes, a tackle shop, a charter office, small-scale fish processing and an informal boat repair yard) are integrated into the marine activities from surrounding businesses (DAFF, 2015). The harbour also serves as a tourist drawcard due to resident stingrays that have been visiting the area for over 30 years.¹⁷⁷ Fishing activities take place throughout the year with peak season over the summer period. The harbour has the capacity to moor 10 boats per day (which averages between 40 to 50 boats per month) and is only suitable for small craft due to its shallow depth (DAFF, 2015). However, many small craft are launched from the slipway. Infrastructure at the Struisbaai harbour includes:

- Three concrete quays
- Mooring (40 trot moorings available inside the breakwater)
- Boat Ramps
- Fish cleaning facility

The town also serves as a centre in the area for marine-related tourism activities, where Struisbaai is well known for its long stretch of white beach where swimming and walking is enjoyed. The Struisbaai Graca Yellowtail Festival¹⁷⁸ is an annual drawcard for tourists as the event promotes freshly caught

¹⁷⁷ See <https://www.whitesharkprojects.co.za/news/parrie-the-stingray/>

¹⁷⁸ See <https://www.struisbaai-info.co.za/town/events/3526/struisbaai-graca-yellowtail-festival>

seafood. Recreational fishing is very popular and saltwater fishing charters are locally available (for example, Awesome Charters¹⁷⁹) from the town. Numerous fishing competitions are held in the area, such as the Struisbaai Yellowtail Derby and Two Oceans Marlin Tournament. The Suidpunt Deep Sea Angling Club, based in the town, hosts and takes part in WPDsAA competitions for inshore leagues and the South African Deep Sea Angling Association¹⁸⁰ (SADSAA) Bottom Fish Nationals.

Involvement in fisheries

According to the fisher rights registration lists, there are 57 small-scale fishers, 16 traditional linefishers, two abalone, one small pelagics (anchovy & sardine), one hake handline, one hake longline and one squid active rights holders. There is also one fish processing establishment rights holder registered in the town.

The fishing community within Struisbaai is best known for its traditional linefishers, who have connections to farming (for example, Elim) and fishing histories within the area. Experiences of forced removals due to apartheid policy in the 1970s and 1980s is common within this fishing community, where some fisher families formally resided in neighbouring Spitskop, but this entire community was forcibly removed to make way for a weapons testing site in 1983. Today, the traditional fishing grounds of the original Spitskop community, which included fish traps, fall under a MPA with no access for former fishing activities (Dennis, 2009).

The traditional fishing community mainly resides in the former non-white settlement area of the town – Struisbaai Noord, located on the periphery of the main town. This settlement is characterised by high unemployment rates, seasonal jobs, a growing dependence on government support grants and a large population living on the poverty line. Most of the residents are coloured and speak Afrikaans, where fishing is viewed as part of their tradition, history and culture, and these are aspects not easily abandoned despite fishers facing many hardships (Parker, 2013). Linefishers from Struisbaai have traditionally used *chukkies*¹⁸¹ as fishing boats that are still used today, as well as more modern skiboats.¹⁸² The fishers belong to or are affiliated with various organisations, for example Coastal Links (Masifundise Development Trust), the Struisbaai Fishers Forum and the Struisbaai Traditional Line Fishers Association. Recent projects in Struisbaai include the development of a Triple Bottom Line and Community-level Fishery Improvement Project (C-FIP) for yellowtail caught by resident traditional linefishers, which collaborates between the Struisbaai Traditional Line Fishers Association, Ocean Outcomes, Conservation International and ABALOB (ABALOB, 2020).

The traditional linefishery operating out of Struisbaai interacts with the broader fishery system operating in the area, such as the recreational fishery and commercial fishery. Traditionally and historically, linefish are the primary marine resource harvested in the Struisbaai region; however, there has been an increase of *chokka* (i.e., squid) boats in these waters over time. Out of the estimated 450 vessels within South Africa's national boat-based commercial linefishery, approximately 20 were registered in Struisbaai in 2013. While the migratory line fishery placed pressure on traditional fishers operating out of Struisbaai in the past by fishing in their traditional waters on a seasonal basis, the increased presence of the commercial squid fishery in the Agulhas region is viewed as more problematic due to their disruptive fishing methods (Parker, 2013). In addition, six recreational charter boat companies were launching from Struisbaai harbour and around 40 private recreational vessels launched from the harbour during the fishing season in 2013. While recreational fishing is an important contributor to the local economy of Struisbaai, most of the visitors' expenditure remains within the hospitality and tourism industry. The local community, particularly those residing in Struisbaai Noord,

¹⁷⁹ See <https://www.awesomefishing.co.za>

¹⁸⁰ See <http://www.sadsaa.co.za>

¹⁸¹ Wooden *chukkies* were first built in Struisbaai in the mid-1950s, where these boats had inboard diesel engines that made a distinct 'Chuck-Chuck-Chuck' sound when they started. In the late 1970s and early 1980s, the wooden boats were replaced by more modern fibreglass hulls, but the fishing compartments remained in wood and retained their characteristic starting motor sound. See <https://www.facebook.com/abalobi.org/>

¹⁸² *Chukkies* are moored in the harbour and accessed by the fishers with row boats, while skiboats are trailer based.

are employed only on an informal basis by recreational fishers as domestic cleaners or gardeners, and for maintenance and fishing related activities (i.e., crew). Therefore, traditional linefishers within Struisbaai often view the recreational fishery to be in competition with their limited marine resources, where income contribution from services related to recreational fishing is seasonal and minimal (Parker, 2013).

Similar to other fishing communities based along the Western Cape's coastline, fishers have noted that changes in currents, wind and water temperature have affected the distribution of the marine resources (such as yellowtail and rock lobster). Intersecting pressures from various fishing sectors such as the increased presence of the squid fishery and competition from the recreational fishery are also viewed as contributing factors to the changing state of the local marine resources by traditional fishers. Issues around permit allocation and problems arising from strict quota allocations are also adding pressures to fishing communities operating out of Struisbaai. Other pressures on local fishers also include limited market access, where fishers have no negotiating power with the buyers in Struisbaai. Finally, poaching is also placing problematic pressures on marine resources in the area, where many youth from impoverished communities such as Struisbaai Noord are pulled into poaching activities due to vulnerabilities that arise from difficulty in obtaining fishing rights and permits and the lack of viable alternative livelihoods (Parker, 2013).

Arniston

Location

The main place of Arniston, also referred to as Waenhuiskrans or Kassiesbaai, is located on the coast near the southern tip of Africa in the Western Cape (34°40'0"S, 20°13'50"E), under the jurisdiction of the Cape Agulhas Local Municipality and Overberg District Municipality. Before the early 1800s, the town was known as Waenhuiskrans, which referred to a sea cave in the area that was as large as a wagon house used by early colonial settlers. Kassiesbaai is the area where the original fishing community was formed in 1900 and traditional fishing cottages are still located, where the term comes from the first houses that were built from wooden boxes (or *kassies*) that washed ashore from shipwrecks. Today, Kassiesbaai is one of the last remaining historical fishing villages in South Africa and is a heritage site.¹⁸³ The name Arniston comes from that of the ship that sank off the town's coast in May 1815 and over the years, the sinking of the Arniston has become synonymous with the town (Dennis, 2009). In recent years, this coastal settlement is also a sought-after retirement and second home area, as well as a popular seaside holiday destination (Cape Agulhas Municipality, 2017).

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Arniston had 337 households and a population size of 1267 (320.76 per km²), where 52 % were female and 48 % male. The town had a median age of 31 years. Most of the population identified as coloured (88 %), followed by 10 % white and 2 % Black African. Most residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (83 %), followed by 12 % other languages, 5 % English and 1 % isiXhosa. For residents of the town, 4 % had no schooling, 7 % had primary education, 12 % had completed their secondary education and 5 % had attained a higher education degree. The unemployment rate was 12 %, while youth (15 – 35-year-olds) unemployment was 25 %. Where employed, 23 % were formally employed, 6 % were informally employed, 5 % were employed in a private household and 66 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 63 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011).

Most permanent residents in Arniston live in the Kassiesbaai settlement, where the majority of residents are coloured and speak Afrikaans. This traditional fishing village is unique as this community has twice in their history resisted forced removals, once by private landowners and once by Apartheid-era policy. For the local community, other than fishing, the only industry in town is aimed at women as domestic workers (van Zyl, 2008).

¹⁸³ See <https://arnistonalive.org.za/fish-house>

Inventory of features

There infrastructure services of the town are in good condition and basic retail, healthcare (i.e., clinic) and shopping services (including the fishing tackle business *Arniston Tackle*) are available in the town. The town has primary education facilities, including a public library. Most administrative, municipal, retail, business and secondary education services are based in the larger centre of Bredasdorp (23 km away). According to the Census 2011 data, most residents resided in formal housing (94 %), where 81 % owned their property without bond and 3 % with bond, 8 % lived in rentals and 3 % lived in rent-free housing. Most households had access to amenities such as electricity (99 %), refuse removal (99 %), piped water (90 %) and sewerage (89 %).

A popular tourist, second home and weekend-away destination, Arniston has a variety of restaurant and café options, including seafood eateries. There are also numerous accommodation options, largely self-catering homes and rustic cottages options, including a caravan park. Over the years, there has been an increase in South African holiday makers who are people of colour, as the youth in Kassiesbaai tend to move to large metropolitan areas such as Cape Town (200 km away) to look for better employment opportunities. These people then return to spend the holidays with their families and/or purchase holiday homes in or adjacent to Kassiesbaai (Norton, 2014).

Arniston houses one of South Africa's proclaimed harbours, which is unique as it is the smallest in terms of physical size and diversity. The harbour serves as a launch and recover operation unit that is confined to the local fishing community that largely resides in Kassiesbaai. Harbour services include management facilities (including a fishery compliance office and harbour master), boat servicing areas, circulation and parking area. The harbour infrastructure is limited to a 25m wide boat ramp constructed with concrete paving slabs and a retrieval winch, where all vessels are launched and recovered via this ramp. There are no mooring facilities and only small fishing vessels and skiboats use this facility (DAFF, 2015).

Similar to Struisbaai, the town has sandy white beaches that serve as a popular tourist attraction for swimming and snorkelling. Arniston Bay is also well known for whale watching opportunities during the months of September to November. Other attractions include the De Hoop and De Mond Nature Reserves, located on either side of Arniston. Recreational fishing, particularly angling activities, is very popular in the area during seasonal holiday periods.¹⁸⁴ The town is also a popular destination for recreational fishers, where the King of Arniston, one of the largest fishing events in South Africa, is held annually by Millenium Angling Club.¹⁸⁵

Involvement in fisheries

According to the fisher rights registration lists, there are 74 small-scale fishers, 11 traditional linefish, four hake handline, four oyster, three hake longline and one West Coast rock lobster (offshore) active rights holders. The historic fishing settlement of Kassiesbaai still has an important tradition of fishing that has continued from the 19th century; however, modern local fishers tend to be under contract to large commercial enterprises rather than being independent fishers.¹⁸⁶ Today, there are fishing businesses and cooperatives registered in Arniston, for example Kassies Covers Primary Cooperative¹⁸⁷ and Arniston Blue Waters Primary Cooperative.¹⁸⁸

Due to the smaller harbour infrastructure and smaller nature of the town, the traditional fishing community in Arniston do not experience as many pressures from outside (i.e., the recreational boat-based fishery) and competing (i.e., the commercial squid fishery) fisheries as in Struisbaai. However,

¹⁸⁴ See <https://showme.co.za/south-africa/arniston-waenhuiskrans-cape-agulhas/>

¹⁸⁵ See <https://store.swellpro.com/blogs/news/sponsorship-koa-2020>

¹⁸⁶ Arniston has several wooden and fibreglass *chukkies* (refer to the section on Struisbaai for more details) that launch from its slipway, but these only employ a small number of crew from the town who regard themselves as Fishers (Norton, 2014).

¹⁸⁷ See <https://b2bhint.com/en/company/za/kassies-covers-primary-co-operative-limited--C2020000847>

¹⁸⁸ See <https://b2bhint.com/en/company/za/arniston-blue-waters-primary-co-operative-limited--C2021301370>

restrictions placed on traditional fishing grounds due to the conservation areas of the surrounding nature reserves has negatively impacted the livelihoods of these traditional fishers, particularly as these processes largely excluded local communities when protected marine areas were initially designed (Dennis, 2009). Issues such as poaching are also common within the area, where fishers have noted that problematic rights-allocation processes, the no-take zones in MPAs, the lack of livelihood opportunities and the access to quick and easy money for the younger generation fuel abalone poaching activities (Isaacs and Witbooi, 2019).

Bredasdorp

Location

The main place of Bredasdorp is located 25 km inland from the coast in the Western Cape (34°32'00"S, 20°02'30"E), under the jurisdiction of the Cape Agulhas Local Municipality and Overberg District Municipality. The town is named after Michiel van Breda, the first mayor of Cape Town, and was established in 1838 on the farm Langefontein. Mayor van Breda was the founder of the merino sheep industry in South Africa, which still forms a substantial part of the local farming community around Bredasdorp.¹⁸⁹ An agricultural hub, other farming activities include wheat, canola, milk and fynbos cultivation.

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Bredasdorp had 4521 households and a population size of 15524 (617.25 per km²), where 51 % were female and 49 % male. The town had a median age of 30 years. Most of the population identified as coloured (66 %), followed by 19 % white, 13 % Black African and 1 % other population groups. Most residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (83 %), followed by 7 % isiXhosa, 6 % other languages and 4 % English. For residents of the town, 3 % had no schooling, 7 % had primary education, 18 % had completed their secondary education and 8 % had attained a higher education degree. The unemployment rate was 9 %, while youth (15 – 35-year-olds) unemployment was 17 %. Where employed, 35 % were formally employed, 3 % were informally employed, 2 % were employed in private households and 59 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 43 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011).

Inventory of features

Bredasdorp is the largest town in the Cape Agulhas Local Municipality and is the administrative centre for both the local and district municipality. The town provides major services to its residents and surrounding areas in terms of municipal, law enforcement, business, retail and education. Specialty shops include a fishing tackle and bait business (i.e., Overberg Marine) to cater for recreational fishing enthusiasts and local fishers. According to the Census 2011 data, most residents resided in formal housing (80 %), where 56 % owned their property without bond and 14 % with bond, 26 % lived in rentals and 2 % lived in rent-free housing. Most households had access to amenities such as electricity (97 %), refuse removal (96 %), sewerage (88 %) and piped water (81 %).

The town also serves as a tourist information hub and has a number of accommodation options and local attractions, including the Bredasdorp Shipwreck Museum. The municipal development strategy put forward a Agri-Park with a district-wide reach that focuses on both the agricultural and ocean economy (Cape Agulhas Municipality, 2017). Through this an aqua-hub was proposed for Bredasdorp in 2017 that included fish intake, storage (cold room) and dispatch facility for fish from Arniston and Struisbaai.

Involvement in fisheries

While the town is located 25 km (i.e., Arniston) to 30 km (i.e., Struisbaai) away from the coast, there is a strong fishing connection within the local community. According to the fisher rights registration lists, active holders include 14 small-scale fishers and one West Coast rock lobster (offshore). There are also

¹⁸⁹ See <https://xplorio.com/bredasdorp/>

fishing cooperatives registered in Bredasdorp – for example, the Bredasdorp Fishing Primary Co-operative.¹⁹⁰

3.2.4. Swellendam Local Municipality

Swellendam Local Municipality is primarily reliant on agriculture and these activities include fruit, wheat, barley, youngberry, livestock, dairy farming, grapes for export and winemaking. Other sectors that are important to the local economy are retail and manufacturing, mining and quarrying (Overberg Municipality, 2020).

Infanta

Location

The main place of Infanta is located on the coast of the Western Cape at the Breed River estuary (34°25'S, 20°51'E), under the jurisdiction of the Swellendam Local Municipality and Overberg District Municipality. The small village was founded in 1819 during a severe drought where its founder, Joseph Barry, transported rice and maize from Cape Town to the Breede River mouth. Today, this small seaside town serves as a tourist attraction for recreational fishers and shore-based whale watching opportunities.¹⁹¹

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Infanta had 33 households and a population size of 90 (4.40 per km²), where 52 % were female and 48 % male. The town had a median age of 64 years. Most of the population identified as white (70 %), followed by 22 % coloured and 9 % Black African. Half of the residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (50 %), followed by 47 % English and 4 % other languages. For residents of the town, 3 % had no schooling, 14 % had completed their secondary education and 24 % had attained a higher education degree. The unemployment rate was low at 3 %. Where employed, 29 % were formally employed, 4 % were employed in private households and 68 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 23 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2021).

Inventory of features

The seaside resort is situated in a remote location, only accessible by gravel road or crossing the Breede River mouth that requires a private boat. The town largely caters for a small retirement community and the tourism industry, where infrastructure is mainly residential with guest house, bed and breakfast and self-catering options for seaside holidaymakers. Major services are located in Swellendam (about 75 km away). According to the Census 2011 data, all residents resided in formal housing, where 76 % owned their property without bond and 3 % with bond, and 6 % lived in rentals. All households had access to amenities such as electricity and sewerage, while 91 % had access to piped water and 30 % had access to refuse removal services.

Involvement in fisheries

The area is a very popular tourist destination due to De Hoop Nature Reserve and whale watching opportunities along the coast. Recreational fishing and boating activities are popular in Infanta, where charter boats are available in the area by appointment. The slipway located in Infanta is a public launch site for smaller craft and managed is managed by the local municipality.

¹⁹⁰ See <https://b2bhint.com/en/company/za/bredasdorp-fishing-primary-co-operative-limited--C2020004541>

¹⁹¹ See <https://www.sa-venues.com/attractionswc/infanta.php>

3.3. Garden Route District Municipality

The Garden Route District Municipality is located in the south-eastern corner of the Western Cape, stretching along the coast from the Breede River mouth to Plettenberg Bay, bounded by the Indian Ocean. In the east the municipality runs up to the Eastern Cape provincial boundary. The district is divided into seven local municipalities – Bitou, Knysna, George, Mossel Bay, Hessequa, Kannaland and Oudtshoorn municipalities (Figure 7). In 2019, this district municipality had a population size of 622 664. The agriculture, forestry and fishing sector contributed 5.8 % to the district's GDP in 2019, with an employment contribution of 12.4 %. However, both GDP and employment growth in this sector is in decline (Garden Route Municipality, 2020). The district municipality has identified sustainable tourism as a key area of interest for investment, specifically Marine protection services and ocean governance, recreational fishing and other activities.

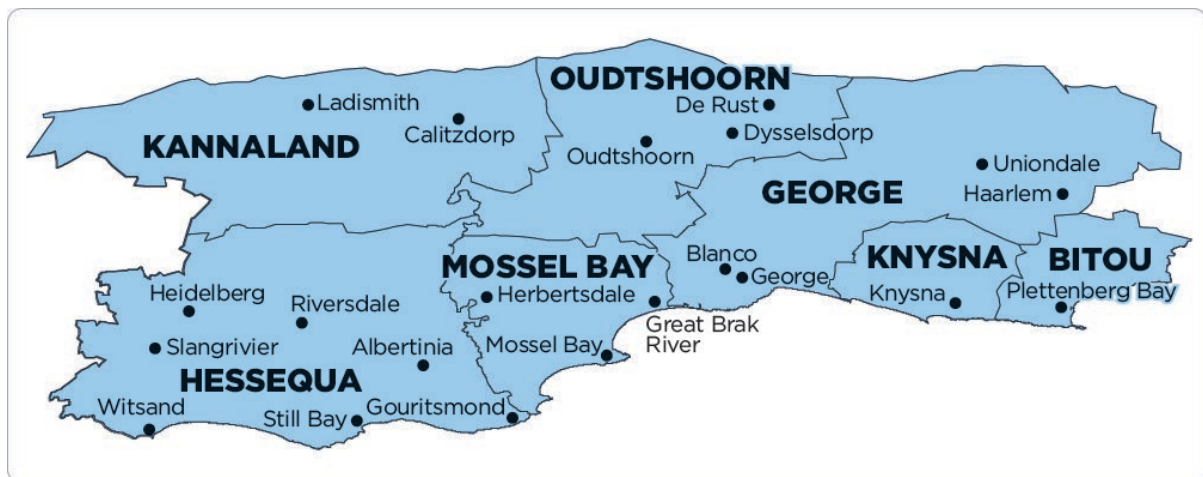


Figure 7: Garden Route District Municipality with seven local municipalities and key urban areas (Western Cape Government, 2021).

3.3.1. Hessequa Local Municipality

The agriculture, forestry and fishing sector contributes 12 % to the municipality's GDP, where this sector is a significant contributor to employment in the municipality at 19.7 %. The sectors accounts for mainly low-skilled workers (61.3 %) and semi-skilled workers (34.8 %).¹⁹² While commercial fishing activities are less prominent along the southern Cape coastline in comparison to the West Coast, there are notable fisheries operating in the area such as the small-scale commercial handline fishery that has been active in the southern Cape for over a century, operating in the inshore area of the Agulhas Bank and traditionally targeting silver kob (Visser, 2015). The southern Cape small-scale commercial linefishery, predominately operating out of communities residing between Port Beaufort (Witsand) and Mossel Bay, is a boat-based, multi-user, multi-area and multi-species fishery that mainly undertakes day trips (Gammage, 2015).

Port Beaufort (including Witsand)

Location

The main place of Port Beaufort is located on the southern Cape coast in the Western Cape (34°23'45"S, 20°49'25"E), under the jurisdiction of the Hessequa Local Municipality and Garden Route District Municipality. The small urban areas of Port Beaufort (located on the banks of the Breede River estuary) and Witsand (situated at the mouth of the Breede River) are located next to each other and form a popular seaside resort, which is a good fishing area and considered to be a whale nursery for migratory Southern Right Whales. In the 1800s, Port Beaufort was originally used as a harbour to transport goods between Cape Town and the Overberg region, which ended in the late 1800s as railways eliminated the

¹⁹² See <https://www.hessequa.gov.za/>

need for this sea route. Witsand was originally a farm owned by Captain Benjamin Moody from 1831 under the British colonial government, where neighbouring farmers were allowed to camp during the holidays. By the 1900s, fishers were given permission to permanently construct cottages in Witsand so they could pursue their profession. The demand for plots increased over time and the area developed into a popular seaside resort (Gammage, 2015). The main place of Port Beaufort includes Witsand and are discussed as a single community for this profile.

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Port Beaufort had 175 households and a population size of 321 (111.46 per km²), where 52 % were female and 48 % male. The town had a median age of 61 years. Most of the population identified as white (87 %), followed by 10 % Black African, 2 % coloured and 1 % other population group. Most residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (70 %), followed by 25 % English and 5 % other languages. For residents of the town, 1 % had primary education, 36 % had completed their secondary education and 40 % had attained a higher education degree. The unemployment rate was 5 %. Where employed, 22 % were formally employed, 9 % were informally employed, 5 % were employed in a private household and 64 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 14 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011).

Inventory of features

The infrastructure services of the town are in good condition with basic services available such as a basic retail and community facilities, where this small urban area mainly functions as a residential settlement with an affluent retirement community and seasonal holiday makers. There are limited employment opportunities and historically this town relied on fishing. Fishing related businesses include Witsand Marine, which sells, services and repairs in/outboards for boats.¹⁹³ Administrative, municipal, larger retail, business and education services are based in the larger centres of Heidelberg (40 km away) and Riversdale (75 km away). According to the Census 2011 data, most residents resided in formal housing (99 %), where 52 % owned their property without bond and 15 % with bond, 18 % lived in rentals and 12 % lived in rent-free housing. All households had access to amenities such as refuse removal, sewerage and piped water, while 98 % had access to electricity.

The town is best known for attractions such as its white sandy beach and river estuary, which provide recreational activities such as swimming, windsurfing, snorkelling, rock and surf angling, deep sea fishing and spear fishing. This popular tourist and holiday destination has a variety of accommodation options, largely self-catering homes and rustic cottages options, including a municipal caravan park. There are also restaurant and café options, including seafood eateries, that mainly operate at full capacity over the holiday periods. As the town predominantly functions as a seaside resort, there are seasonal safety services. Witsand serves as a rescue base and Pink Rescue Buoy placement for the NSRI (NSRI, 2020).

The town contains the Breede Estuary (*Die Kraaltjie*) public boat launch site, which is managed by the local municipality. This launch site was historically used to launch boats for fishing purposes and today it also accommodates recreational water users, such as skiing, fishing and general boating.¹⁹⁴

Involvement in fisheries

While Witsand has a long history linked to the small-scale commercial linefishery, stretching back over 100 years, most of the former fishing families who first established themselves in the town have exited the fishery (Gammage, 2015). Today, according to the fisher rights registration lists, there is one hake longline and one traditional linefish active rights holders.

As the Port Beaufort/Witsand area houses more affluent residents and historical development was catered to the white community based on apartheid planning, skippers and marine-related business

¹⁹³ See <https://b2bhint.com/en/company/za/witsand-marine--K2021665895>

¹⁹⁴ See <https://breede-river.org/wp-content/uploads/2020/05/Kraaltjie-PLS-April2020.pdf>

owners typically live in this area. Fishers who work as crew or who do not have the means to live in this more expensive area therefore live outside of Port Beaufort. Unlike typical spatial development that arose from apartheid planning where “white” towns have analogous “coloured” or “black” settlements in close proximity, Port Beaufort does not have a settlement in close proximity and most crew members reside in Slangrivier (about 32 km away).

Slangrivier

Location

The main place of Slangrivier is located 35 km inland from the southern Cape coast in the Western Cape (34°08'14"S, 20°51'42"E), under the jurisdiction of the Hessequa Local Municipality and Garden Route District Municipality. The town was formally established in 1838 when the Governor of the Cape Colony awarded land to the indigenous community for their loyalty during the Cape Frontier Wars. Other possible historical origins of Slangrivier are linked to shipwreck survivors, who were thought to have settled in the secluded area to avoid conflicts with surrounding farmers.¹⁹⁵

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Slangrivier had 685 households and a population size of 3002 (264.26 per km²), with an even split between females and males. The town had a median age of 28 years. Most of the population identified as coloured (96 %), followed by 2 % Black African, 1 % white and 1 % Indian/Asian. Most residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (95 %), followed by 2 % English and 2 % other languages. For residents of the town, 4 % had no schooling, 10 % had primary education and 8 % had completed their secondary education. The unemployment rate was 10 %, while youth (15 – 35-year-olds) unemployment was 20 %. Where employed, 10 % were formally employed, 7 % were informally employed, 1 % were employed in a private household and 82 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 70 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011).

Inventory of features

The infrastructure services of the town are in fair to poor condition with basic services available, including a municipal office, library, sport facility, health service, community facilities and primary education services. However, access to and within this rural settlement is via gravel roads and many residents do not have their own means of transportation, making it difficult to access outside centres when they need to purchase goods or access services. Larger administrative, municipal, larger retail, business and education services are based in the larger centre of Heidelberg (15 km away). According to the Census 2011 data, most residents resided in formal housing (90 %), where 79 % owned their property without bond and 2 % with bond, 11 % lived in rentals and 7 % lived in rent-free housing. Most households had access to amenities such as electricity (98 %), refuse removal (98 %), sewerage (78 %) and piped water (68 %).

Involvement in fisheries

The community in Slangrivier is intricately linked to the small-scale commercial linefishery of the southern Cape, where Slangrivier residents have traditionally served as crew to skippers operating out of Witsand (about 32 km away) over the past century (Gammage, 2015). Given the economic divide (including spatial inequalities perpetuated by apartheid) between these two towns, crew in remote (and poorer) settlements of Slangrivier feel that their inability to access the capital required to acquire vessels make them unable to transition to skipper and business owner if they wish to do so (Gammage, 2019). Today, according to the fisher rights registration lists, there are nine small-scale fishers and one oyster rights holder.

¹⁹⁵ See <https://explorersgardenroute.co.za/project/slangrivier/>

Riversdale

Location

The main place of Riversdale is located 50 km inland from the southern Cape coast in the Western Cape (34°05'49"S, 21°15'44"E), under the jurisdiction of the Hessequa Local Municipality and Garden Route District Municipality. The town was proclaimed in 1838 and functions as an agricultural service hub (including retail, business and educational services) to surrounding farming communities, smaller towns and coastal resorts such as Witsand (75 km away) and Stilbaai (50 km away).¹⁹⁶

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Riversdale had 4513 households and a population size of 16169 (160.97 per km²), where 53 % were female and 47 % male. The town had a median age of 30 years. Most of the population identified as coloured (75 %), followed by 15 % white and 9 % Black African. Most residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (89 %), followed by 5 % other languages, 4 % isiXhosa and 2 % English. For residents of the town, 4 % had no schooling, 7 % had completed their primary education, 15 % had completed their secondary education and 6 % had attained a higher education degree. The unemployment rate was 10 %, while youth (15 – 35-year-olds) unemployment was 20 %. Where employed, 25 % were formally employed, 4 % were informally employed, 4 % were employed in a private household and 67 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 47 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011).

Inventory of features

Infrastructure is in good condition with basic services, including law and traffic services, postal services, municipal offices, a library, sports facilities, health services, emergency and safety services, community facilities, education facilities, an industrial area, business centre and an airstrip. According to the Census 2011 data, most residents resided in formal housing (93 %), where 60 % owned their property without bond and 7 % with bond, 22 % lived in rentals and 7 % lived in rent-free housing. Most households had access to amenities such as electricity (98 %), sewerage (95 %), refuse removal (94 %) and piped water (87 %).

Involvement in fisheries

Riversdale is located inland of the coast, where residents travel to neighbouring seaside resorts to engage in fishing activities. This custom was established from the 1860s, where farmers from the Riversdale area would travel to the coast during the summer to camp with their families and fish off the beach (Visser, 2014). According to the fisher rights registration lists, there is one active holder for traditional linefish, who is linked to the coastal settlement of Vermaaklikheid (45 km away).

Vermaaklikheid

Location

The main place of Vermaaklikheid is located 10 km inland from the southern Cape coast in the Western Cape (34°18'S, 21°2'E), under the jurisdiction of the Hessequa Local Municipality and Garden Route District Municipality. This small hamlet is situated on the banks of the Duiwenhoks River and comprises of mainly holiday homes that are surrounded by agricultural land. The coloured community who resides permanently in this settlement was traditionally a subsistence fishing community who historically fished in the river and from the shore at Puntjie (10 km away) (Gammage, 2015).

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Vermaaklikheid had 99 households and a population size of 356 (2.74 per km²), where 51 % were female and 49 % male. The town had a median age of 29 years. Most of the population identified as coloured (64 %), followed by 21 % white, 13 % Black African and 3 % other population. Most residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (92 %), followed by 7 %

¹⁹⁶ See <https://www.garden-route-info.co.za/routes/town/158/riversdale>

English and 1 % other languages. For residents of the village, 6 % had no schooling, 7 % had primary education, 8 % had completed their secondary education and 3 % had attained a higher education degree.

The remote location of Vermaaklikheid has a notable influence on available formal and informal job opportunities. In 2011, the unemployment rate was 7 %, while youth (15 – 35-year-olds) unemployment was 12 %. While this unemployment rate is lower than provincial and national averages, these statistics only consider active job seekers and fishers who are not fishing do not necessarily look for other employment nor do they consider themselves unemployed (Gammage, 2015). Where employed, 11 % were formally employed, 24 % were informally employed, 9 % were employed in a private household and 56 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 63 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011). The high poverty rate is indicative of socio-economic struggles of the local community in this area, particularly the traditional fishing community (Gammage, 2015).

Inventory of features

The infrastructure services of the village are in fair to poor condition with basic services available; however, administrative, municipal, retail, business and education services are based in neighbouring centres of Riversdale (45 km away). The village is rural and isolated, with access via gravel roads and is characterised by limited transport and communication options, limited access to markets, high transaction costs and lack of access to public services and infrastructure. There are no public schools in the area (Gammage, 2015, Duggan, 2018). According to the Census 2011 data, most residents lived in formal dwellings (89 %), where just over half of the residents lived in RDP housing (56 %). While most residents had access to weekly refuse removal services (88 %), piped water within their homes (70 %) and electricity (69 %), only 36 % had a flush toilet with a formal sewerage system.

The area is relatively popular for local tourism, where a few self-catering options are available along the river and attractions include snorkelling, swimming and boating activities.¹⁹⁷ In recent years there has been an influx of wealthier city dwellers (typically from Cape Town) and lifestyle farming has replaced traditional agricultural activities, where products aimed at niche markets are produced such as olives and cheese.¹⁹⁸ The shift of these traditional agricultural practices to holiday homes or non-crop farming has further limited employment opportunities in the area for local communities (Gammage, 2015). The gentrification of the area has also resulted in conflict between wealthy, holiday home landowners and the traditional fishing community, as access to the river and sea has become increasingly restricted due to fences being placed around private properties when purchased by people from outside the community.¹⁹⁹

A public boat launch site (*Duiwenhoks Site A Upriver*) is located upriver that falls under the local municipality, where boats are able to navigate to the river mouth. There are also a series of informal slipways closer towards the river mouth. Informal and recreational fishing activities take place in the river, which is monitored by the Duiwenhoks Conservancy during peak season.²⁰⁰ The few small-scale commercial fishers who operate in the area either launch in the river and exit at the river mouth (which is dangerous and can only be done in good weather conditions) or drive to the harbour in Stilbaai (approximately 45 km away via gravel road).

Involvement in fisheries

Given the difficulties experienced by the local fishing community in terms of restricted access to their traditional fishing grounds, challenging socio-economic circumstances and strict quota/regulation

¹⁹⁷ See <https://www.sa-venues.com/attractionswc/vermaaklikheid.php>

¹⁹⁸ See <https://www.oulywe.co.za>

¹⁹⁹ See <https://www.masifundise.org/private-developments-erode-livelihoods-of-south-coast-fishers/>

²⁰⁰ See

https://www.westerncape.gov.za/eadp/files/atoms/files/009_%20Duiwenhoks%20EMP_October%202019_final%20delivered.pdf

systems, current fishing activities are limited to local community members acting as crew for small-scale commercial boats that operate in the area (Gammage, 2015). Similar to the fishing community in Slangrivier, fishers working as crew noted that their inability to access capital to buy boats prevent them from moving into the roles of skippers or business owners (Gammage, 2019). According to the fisher rights registration lists, there are seven small-scale fishers, two traditional linefish and one hake handline active rights holders.

Melkhoutfontein

Location

The main place of Melkhoutfontein is located adjacent to the Goukou River, 7 km inland from the southern Cape coast in the Western Cape (34°20'0"S, 21°25'0"E), under the jurisdiction of the Hessequa Local Municipality and Garden Route District Municipality. Since the founding of the town in 1872, Melkhoutfontein has always been a predominately coloured settlement, where this community traditionally fished in the Goukou River with handlines and nets; however, this access has been lost over time due to historical policies favouring recreational angling and conservation measures (Visser, 2015). While the community of Melkhoutfontein initially pursued agriculture as a primary livelihood, this gradually changed from the 1900s as land in the area became increasingly subdivided and access to arable land was lost, and so the community turned to the small-scale commercial handline fishery an alternative livelihood option (Visser, 2014). Due to apartheid policies, Melkhoutfontein was segregated from neighbouring Stilbaai (about 7 km away on the coast) as a coloured residential area, where the lack of infrastructure and economic opportunities stemming from this unequal divide persists today. However, Melkhoutfontein remains intricately linked to Stilbaai as it provides infrastructure, services and diverse employment opportunities – including employment in the handline fishery and access to the sea via the Stilbaai harbour.

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Melkhoutfontein had 614 households and a population size of 2533 (2723.66 per km²), where 51 % were female and 49 % male. The town had a median age of 26 years. Most of the population identified as coloured (96 %), followed by 3 % Black African and 1 % white. Most residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (94 %), followed by 4 % other languages, 2 % English and 1 % isiXhosa. For residents of the town, 3 % had no schooling, 11 % had primary education and 11 % had completed their secondary education. The unemployment rate was low at 2 %, while youth (15 – 35-year-olds) unemployment was 4 %. Where employed, 16 % were formally employed, 10 % were informally employed, 2 % were employed in a private household and 72 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 48 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011).

Inventory of features

The infrastructure services of the village are in fair to poor condition with basic services available, including limited shopping and bottle store services, a municipal office, community facilities, health services, a sport facility, primary education services (up to Grade 9) and a public library. Larger administrative, municipal, retail, business and alternative primary education services are based in Stilbaai, secondary education is accessible in the larger neighbouring centre of Riversdale (45 km away on tar road) or Albertinia (36 km on gravel road). There is one cultural exchange programme that has set up tourist experiences such as home stays and student exchange programs,²⁰¹ however most of the tourism is concentrated on the coast in Stilbaai.

According to the Census 2011 data, most residents resided in formal housing (81 %), where 77 % owned their property without bond and 2 % with bond, 13 % lived in rentals and 5 % lived in rent-free housing. Most households had access to amenities such as electricity (91 %), sewerage (90 %) and piped water (74 %). All households had access to refuse removal services.

²⁰¹ See <https://explorersgardenroute.co.za/project/melkhoutfontein/>

Involvement in fisheries

Similar to Slangrivier, the community in Melkhoutfontein is intricately linked to the small-scale commercial linefishery of the southern Cape as crew members mostly live in Melkhoutfontein and typically work for the fishery operating out of Stilbaai (Gammage, 2015). The area has a long tradition of fishing stretching back over a century and today there are active fishing cooperatives in these communities, such as the Melkhoutfontein Stilbaai Fishing Primary Co-Operative.²⁰² According to the fisher rights registration lists, there are 29 small-scale fishers, two traditional handline, one hake handline and one oyster active rights holders.

Stilbaai

Location

The main place of Stilbaai is at the mouth of the Goukou River on the southern Cape coast in the Western Cape (34°22'06"S, 21°24'40"E), under the jurisdiction of the Hessequa Local Municipality and Garden Route District Municipality. The area is well known for its historic Khoisan fish traps that were constructed by Khoisan communities over 3000 years ago and were taken over and maintained by the first European settlers from the 20th century (Visser, 2015). The town of Stilbaai had strong links to the agricultural community as the area was historically used as a holiday campsite and recreational fishing area for neighbouring farming families from the 1860s (Visser, 2015). The commercial handline fishery subsequently developed from the 1900s when some white farming families in the Stilbaai area and the coloured community in Melkhoutfontein required alternative livelihood strategies as land became too subdivided to support primary agricultural livelihoods (Visser, 2015). Today, the town is an important seasonal tourist hub (including second homeowners) and contains a large retirement community, largely consisting of affluent retirees from surrounding farms and larger metropolitan areas.

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Stilbaai had 1734 households and a population size of 3510 (137.76 per km²), where 56 % were female and 44 % male. The town had a median age of 63 years. Most of the population identified as white (92 %), followed by 4 % Black African, 3 % white and 1 % other population. Most residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (79 %), followed by 13 % English and 8 % other languages. For residents of the town, 1 % had completed their primary education, 36 % had completed their secondary education and 31 % had attained a higher education degree. The unemployment rate was very low at 1 %, while youth (15 – 35-year-olds) unemployment was 4 %. Where employed, 17 % were formally employed, 4 % were informally employed, 2 % were employed in a private household and 77 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 16 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011).

Inventory of features

The infrastructure services of the town are in good condition with basic services available, including shopping malls and retail services, a business centre, a municipal office, law and traffic enforcement services, community facilities, health services, postal services, a sport facility, primary education services, a public library, seasonal emergency services and an airstrip. There are numerous specialty shops and enterprises, including marine-related businesses such as fish tackle (for example, *Stil Fishing*) and numerous fishing companies (for example, Stilbaai Sustainable Fishing²⁰³). Stilbaai also houses a large retirement community with frail care facilities. Larger administrative, municipal, retail, business and secondary education services are based in the neighbouring centre of Riversdale (50 km away). According to the Census 2011 data, most residents resided in formal housing (99 %), where 62 % owned their property without bond and 9 % with bond, 22 % lived in rentals and 5 % lived in rent-free housing. Most households had access to amenities such as electricity (99 %), sewerage (99 %), piped water (99 %) and refuse removal (98 %).

²⁰² See <https://b2bhint.com/en/company/za/melkhoutfontein-stilbaai-fishing-primary-co-operative-limited--C2020004963>

²⁰³ See <https://b2bhint.com/en/company/za/stilbaai-sustainable-fisheries--K2019375463>

The town is a popular holiday destination, where the influx of tourist demand has seen an increase in the building industry to cater for building and renovating holiday homes (Norton, 2014). Tourism is largely local and concentrated over the summer and Easter vacation times, where there is a substantial influx of holiday makers over these periods and there is a dedicated tourism office in the town. The river and beach in Stilbaai are used for recreational activities such as water sports and fishing/angling.²⁰⁴ Given the popularity of the area for recreational fishing activities, fishing competitions and other related events are run in the area.²⁰⁵ Other attractions include the 25 stonewalled fish traps showcasing early fishing traditions in the area stemming back pre-colonial times, which is a national heritage site and located in a MPA.²⁰⁶ There are a number of accommodation options ranging from high-end holiday houses to guesthouses, bed and breakfast, self-catering, chalets, a caravan park and camping grounds. There are various restaurant and café options available in Stilbaai, including seafood eateries.

Stilbaai serves as a rescue base and Pink Rescue Buoy placement for the NSRI (NSRI, 2020). The town houses one of the 12 proclaimed harbours in South Africa and the *Goukou Main Slipway* is a public launch site for smaller vessels and crafts, managed by the local municipality. Traditionally, the harbour was used to service the small-scale commercial handline fishery that has operated in the area for over a century (Visser, 2015), where today skiboats are mainly used. Today, increasing demand on the harbour has come from recreational and tourism uses. The Stilbaai harbour is one of the smaller proclaimed harbours with limited facilities of a boat launching ramp that is protected by a short breakwater and quay wall, which serves the local fishing industry and recreational users (DAFF, 2015). There are also cleaning tubs located next to the winch house. In addition to the harbour master, there is also a Fisheries Compliance Office located in the town.

Involvement in fisheries

Despite many fishers in Stilbaai exiting the industry over the years, the traditional handline fishery remains active in Stilbaai today and is the main commercial fishery operating out of the harbour. Whereas the I&J factory closed, Viking remains as commercial buyer of linefish. Like Witsand, it is mainly skippers and boat owners who live in Stilbaai (who are typically white), while the coloured crew members live in Melkhoutfontein. According to the fisher rights registration lists, there are 16 small-scale fishers, nine traditional linefish, three hake handline and one oyster active rights holders. The commercial handline fishery operates within many constraints and stressors, ranging from the relatively remote geographic location of Stilbaai, to unfavourable policy and market forces, to a highly variable natural system that has also seen the decline of economically important fish species such as silver kob in recent years (Gammage, 2015). The southern Cape small-scale commercial handline fishery also experiences conflict with other competing fisheries that operate in the same fishing grounds – for example, the South African inshore trawl fishery.²⁰⁷ The inshore trawl fishery reportedly has a severe impact on the southern Cape linefishery, ranging from impacts on silver kob stock to modification of the benthic habitat (Gammage, 2015).

Gouritsmond

Location

The main place of Gouritsmond is at the mouth of the Gourits River on the southern Cape coast in the Western Cape (34°20'59"S, 21°52'43"E), under the jurisdiction of the Hessequa Local Municipality and Garden Route District Municipality. This seaside village is best known for recreational fishing activities, which attract seasonal tourists to the town. Gouritsmond is also a smaller retirement destination for more affluent farmers from the surrounding agricultural communities.²⁰⁸

²⁰⁴ See <https://stilbaaitourism.co.za>

²⁰⁵ See <https://www.kayakfish.co.za/stilbaai-kayak-fishing-classic-2020/>

²⁰⁶ See <https://www.cradleofhumanculture.co.za/places/southern-cape/tidal-fish-traps-stilbaai>

²⁰⁷ The South African inshore trawl fishery started in the beginning of the 20th century as a mixed fishery that targets hake and Agulhas sole, operating mainly between Cape Agulhas and the Great Kei River at the eastern boundary of the Agulhas Bank (Gammage, 2015).

²⁰⁸ See <https://www.garden-route-info.co.za/routes/town/147/gouritsmond>

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Gouritsmond had 206 households and a population size of 515 (158.95 per km²), where 51 % were female and 49 % male. The town had a median age of 38 years. Just over half of the population identified as coloured (54 %), followed by 39 % white and 5 % Black African. Most residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (92 %), followed by 4 % other languages and 3 % English. For residents of the town, 6 % had no schooling, 6 % had completed their primary education, 16 % had completed their secondary education and 17 % had attained a higher education degree. The unemployment rate was 6 %, while youth (15 – 35-year-olds) unemployment was 15 %. Where employed, 13 % were formally employed, 12 % were informally employed, 10 % were employed in a private household and 65 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 44 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011).

Inventory of features

The infrastructure services of Gouritsmond are in good condition with basic services available, including a municipal office, community facilities, medical services, a post office, a sport facility, a public library and seasonal safety services. The main shop in Gouritsmond sells groceries, fishing gear, tackle and bait (among other items).²⁰⁹ Larger administrative, municipal, retail, business and education services are based in the neighbouring centre of Mossel Bay (40 km away).

The town is spatially divided according to historical apartheid policies, where wealthier parts are located along the sea front with predominately white residents, while the coloured settlement (named Bitouville) is separated from the main town of Gouritsmond, a few kilometres inland from the coast. While the former white area is characterised by larger houses, good infrastructure and business services, the coloured settlement consists of predominately of smaller cottages and RDP housing with a small spaza shop. According to the Census 2011 data, all residents resided in formal housing, where 67 % owned their property without bond and 15 % with bond, 11 % lived in rentals and 5 % lived in rent-free housing. Most households had access to amenities such as sewerage (99 %), piped water (99 %), refuse removal (99 %) and electricity (97 %).

As a popular seasonal seaside resort, there are numerous accommodation options including a hotel, self-catering cottages, bungalows, holiday homes, a municipal caravan site and camping grounds. There are also limited restaurant and café options. The area is very popular for recreational fishing activities with well-known angling spots and a popular beach for swimming activities.²¹⁰ Fishing charters are available in the area, where *Gourits Fishing Charters* operates out of the town, offering deep sea and estuary charter trips.²¹¹

There is a public boat launch site in the Gourits estuary (Gourits Estuary Slipway) overseen by the local municipality, where a number of boats are launched, largely for commercial purposes. Commercial skiboats are launch on a daily basis, while recreational skiboats and river boats are launched from the site mainly over the holiday periods.²¹²

Involvement in fisheries

According to the fisher rights registration lists, there are 18 small-scale fishers, two traditional linefish and one hake handline active rights holders. Like Witsand, there is a limited presence of the small-scale commercial handline fishery operating out of Gouritsmond. The traditional fishing community is predominately found in Bitouville, where these small-scale fishers have experienced numerous challenges related to the implementation of the Small Scale Fisheries Policy and uneven competition

²⁰⁹ See <https://www.gourits.co.za/kontreiwinkel>

²¹⁰ See <https://www.garden-route-info.co.za/routes/town/147/gouritsmond>

²¹¹ See <https://www.gouritsfishing.co.za>

²¹² See

https://mapservices.westerncape.gov.za/AGOL_Hyperlink_Docs/DEADP/BoatLaunchSite_PDFs/GR01.pdf

from the inshore trawl fishery (Gammage, 2019). There is a presence of fishing co-operatives, such as the Gouritsmond Small Scale Fishers Primary Co-operative.²¹³

3.3.2. Mossel Bay Local Municipality

The main economic activities in the Mossel Bay Local Municipality are agriculture (aloes, cattle, dairy, ostriches, sheep, timber, vegetables and wine), fishing, light industry, petrochemicals and tourism. The municipality is home to the South African inshore trawl fishery that is based out of Mossel Bay, which has been operating in the area since 1900, targeting hake and Agulhas sole on the Agulhas Bank (Visser, 2015).

Herbertsdale

Location

The main place of Herbertsdale is located in the Western Cape (34°01'S, 21°46'E), under the jurisdiction of the Mossel Bay Local Municipality and Garden Route District Municipality. Originating on a farm and serving as an agricultural village, the town was established in 1865 and named after the farm owner (James Benton Herbert).²¹⁴

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Herbertsdale had 168 households and a population size of 666 (232.27 per km²), where 51 % were female and 49 % male. The town had a median age of 33 years. Most of the population identified as coloured (77 %), followed by 13 % white, 8 % Black African, 1 % Indian/Asian and 1 % other population. Most residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (96 %), followed by 2 % English, 1 % isiXhosa and 1 % other languages. For residents of the town, 4 % had no schooling, 8 % had completed their primary education, 10 % had completed their secondary education and 4 % had attained a higher education degree. The unemployment rate was negligible. Where employed, 10 % were formally employed, 5 % were informally employed and 85 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 63 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011).

Inventory of features

Infrastructure is in good condition with basic services, including limited shopping and retail services, a satellite police station, community facilities and primary education facilities. According to the Census 2011 data, most residents resided in formal housing (98 %), where 60 % owned their property without bond and 8 % with bond, 22 % lived in rentals and 4 % lived in rent-free housing. All households had access to amenities of sewerage and refuse removal, while 98 % had access to electricity and 79 % had access to piped water.

Involvement in fisheries

According to the fisher rights registration lists, there is one active small-scale fisher rights holder, who is linked to the coastal urban area of Mossel Bay (45 km away).

Mossel Bay urban complex: Isinyoka, Kwanongaba and Mossel bay

Location

The urban complex of Mossel Bay is located on the southern Cape coast in the Western Cape (34°11'00"S, 22°08'00"E), under the jurisdiction of the Mossel Bay Local Municipality and Garden Route District Municipality. The modern-day town is best known for its historical association with European explorers, where the Portuguese explorer Bartolomeu Dias first landed in the area in 1488. Mossel Bay was founded by merchants who developed the port to ship grain, wool and timber from the surrounding agricultural communities to Cape Town and in 1898 the port was upgraded to

²¹³ See <https://b2bhint.com/en/company/za/gouritsmond-small-scale-fishers-primary-co-operative-limited--C2020004552>

²¹⁴ See <https://www.visitmosselbay.co.za/herbertsdale/>

accommodate expanding railway infrastructure. While merchants in Mossel Bay typically owned fishing boats that undertook handline fishing activities from the port, the expansion of the harbour in the late 1800s resulted in the trawling industry moving into Mossel Bay from the 1900s – first operating under the South African Fisheries and Cold Storage Company that was later bought by I&J in the 1920s. From the start of the 20th century, the active handline fishery within the southern Cape region therefore had to co-exist with the industrial trawl sector, where these two fisheries continue to compete over inshore resources (Visser, 2015).

Historically, the economy of Mossel Bay relied heavily on farming, fishing and activities associated with its port. From the 1960s, the discovery of natural offshore gas fields resulted in the development of the gas-to-liquids refinery operated by PetroSA, which now serves as an important economic contributor within the area. Both domestic and international tourism also forms an important component of the Mossel Bay economy, where this area has served as a popular seaside resort for domestic tourism for over a century.²¹⁵

For our communities of interest, the urban complex of Mossel Bay consists of the main place of Mossel Bay and its two satellite townships of Isinyoka and Kwanonqaba, each main place located approximately 5 km from Mossel Bay central.

Demographic attributes

For each community of interest, the Census 2011 data was as follows:

		Isinyoka	Kwanonqaba	Mossel bay
General	Total Estimated Population (count)	811	27561	29887
	Population Density (count per km ²)	7764.37	5271.72	813.17
	Number of Households (count)	27	8791	9033
	Males (%)	52%	50%	48%
	Females (%)	48%	50%	52%
	Female Headed Households (%)	22%	36%	34%
Population Age	Median Age (years)	26	25	37
	Under 5 years (%)	11%	12%	7%
	65 years and older (%)	1%	2%	13%
Population Group	Black African (%)	98%	67%	13%
	Coloured (%)	1%	31%	51%
	Indian/Asian (%)	0%	0%	1%
	White (%)	1%	0%	34%
	Other (%)	0%	1%	1%
First Language	Afrikaans (%)	1%	35%	81%
	English (%)	2%	5%	9%
	IsiXhosa (%)	93%	53%	7%

²¹⁵ See <https://www.visitmosselbay.co.za>

		Isinyoka	Kwanonqaba	Mossel bay
	Other (%)	4%	8%	3%
Employment Status	Unemployment Rate (%)	37%	18%	9%
	Youth Unemployment Rate (between 15 and 35 years old) (%)	27%	11%	6%
	Formally Employed (%)	11%	19%	27%
	Informally Employed (%)	1%	4%	4%
	Private household (%)	1%	3%	2%
	Retired/unknown (%)	88%	74%	67%
Families living below UBPL (Poverty Status)	Annual Household Income that is equal to or less than the UBPL (%)	96%	78%	39%
	Head of Household 64 years and younger (%)	89%	75%	28%
	Head of Household 65 years and older (%)	0%	4%	11%
Level of Education	No Schooling (%)	1%	4%	2%
	Completed Primary School (%)	5%	6%	5%
	Completed Secondary School (%)	12%	17%	28%
	Higher (%)	0%	2%	13%

Stemming from apartheid policies, the urban complex of Mossel Bay remains spatially divided where marginalised areas such as Isinyoka and Kwanonqaba house predominately Black African residents and are characterised by high levels of poverty and unemployment rates. The main place of Mossel Bay is more representative of the historical make-up of the town, consisting mainly of coloured and white residents and as this area contains wealthier residents, the poverty and unemployment rates are lower than its associated satellite township nodes.

Inventory of features

Mossel Bay serves as a major shopping, retail, law enforcement, traffic, administrative, educational and transport hub (via the port) for surrounding communities. This includes a regional DFFE office. The infrastructure of the town is well developed with commercial and business centres, with a number of residential areas including estates, retirement villages and a golf estate. There are a number of marine-related businesses, ranging from bait and tackle shops (for example, *Go Fish*, *Extreme Outdoors*, *Viking Inshore* and *Tackle Shack*) and deep sea charters such as GOFISH Deep Sea Fishing Charters, Mossel Bay Deepsea Fishing Adventures, ReelTime Deep Sea Fishing Charters to fish processing establishments with associated fish shops (such as Viking/Sea Harvest and Cachalot). Fishing associations are also active in the town, such as the Mossel Bay Line Fishing Association.²¹⁶

Residential infrastructure varies based on location and historic development patterns stemming from apartheid policies. The features for each community of interest in terms of housing and services in 2011 is detailed below (Census 2011):

		Isinyoka	Kwanonqaba	Mossel bay
Type of Dwelling	Formal (%)	26%	73%	97%

²¹⁶ See <https://b2bhint.com/en/company/za/mossel-bay-line-fishing-association--K2012212948>

		Isinyoka	Kwanonqaba	Mossel bay
	Informal/other (%)	74%	27%	3%
Tenure Status	Owned and fully paid off (%)	74%	48%	52%
	Owned but not yet paid off (%)	0%	14%	4%
	Rented (%)	19%	25%	25%
	Occupied rent-free (%)	7%	6%	15%
Access to Amenities	Flush toilet connected to sewage and septic tank (%)	30%	90%	99%
	Weekly refuse removal (%)	33%	95%	99%
	Piped water inside dwelling (%)	11%	69%	86%
	Electricity for lighting (%)	78%	89%	99%

The town serves as a popular seaside resort that accommodates large numbers of (mainly domestic) tourists over the holiday periods, where the town has a dedicated tourism bureau. There are a number of accommodation options available, ranging from hotels, guest houses and self-catering units to caravan parks. Numerous restaurant and cafe options are available in the town, with several seafood speciality eateries located along the seafront of Mossel Bay. Seaside attractions include the popular sandy beach, the Bartolomeu Dias museum complex and the Cape St Blaize Lighthouse. The annual Dias & Port Festival is aimed at celebrating the rich maritime history of the port in Mossel Bay.²¹⁷ The Mossel Bay Yacht and Boat Club, established in 1956, is well known for the yacht racing events and deep sea angling events it organises. Activities of the club include yachting (keelboat, multihull and dinghies), boating (motor yacht/boat leisure and deep sea angling), diving (snorkelling, scuba diving and underwater hockey), rowing (sea/surf kayak), development of the youth and social.²¹⁸

The port in Mossel Bay is the smallest commercial port in South Africa and is owned and managed by the Transnet National Ports Authority, with an active harbour that primarily caters for the local fishing industry and the oil industry (i.e., off-shore gas), and handles little other cargo. The harbour entrance channel has a depth of 8m, where bunkering is available at quays two, three and five as well as on the jetty. There is a slipway for ship repair up to 200 tonnes. The port handles approximately 1000 ships per year, where the majority of the vessels are South African trawlers.²¹⁹ There is an active fish cannery, fishing vessel and ice plant operating in the Mossel Bay port under Afro Fishing, which is the only sardine cannery on the South Coast.²²⁰ While I&J was previously active in the Mossel Bay fishing industry, this company has disinvested from the area and no longer has active factory operations in the port.²²¹ Viking Fishing, now a division of Sea Harvest, still maintains an inshore trawling division located in the Mossel Bay harbour.²²² The harbour has a Fisheries Office that serves as a designated landing site for permit holders. There is also a licenced boat launching site that is operated by the Mossel Bay Yacht Club.

²¹⁷ See <https://www.visitmosselbay.co.za>

²¹⁸ See <http://www.mbybc.co.za>

²¹⁹ See <https://ports.co.za/mossel-bay.php>

²²⁰ See <https://www.afrofishing.co.za>

²²¹ The closure of the I&J factory in Mossel Bay resulted in 450 direct job losses, with a further indirect impact on businesses that provided goods and services to this industrial fishing company.

²²² See <https://www.vikingfishing.co.za>

Involvement in fisheries

The port and harbour of Mossel Bay serves as an important centre for industrial fisheries on the South Coast of and smaller commercial fisheries, such as the southern Cape linefishery.²²³ The inshore handline fishery has diminished significantly over the decades since it formally started operating in the southern Cape from the early 1900s, with a long history of economic and political marginalisation (Visser, 2015). Competition between the inshore trawl fishery and the traditional linefishery has also resulted in traditional fishers exiting the fishery over time (Gammage, 2015). According to the fisher rights registration lists, there are nine traditional linefish, eight hake handline, six oyster, five hake longline, two hake deep sea trawl, two hake inshore trawl (hake and sole), one demersal shark, one small (anchovy & sardine) pelagics, one large pelagics and one squid active rights holders. There are also seven fish processing establishments rights holders registered in Mossel Bay.

Traditionally, many small-scale fishers originated from the coloured communities in Mossel Bay, where five small-scale fishers are registered in the community of Asla and two small-scale fishers are registered in the community of Tarka. The Tarka community was initially established in 1898 in a suburb known as *New Rush*, which was the only demarcated area for coloured people in the former urban centre of Mossel Bay. However, this community was disposed of their land from the 1960s onwards due to apartheid policies as Mossel Bay central was declared a whites only area, where the coloured community was forcibly removed to an area with no social or physical infrastructure. After democracy, former tenants or their direct descendants launched a land claim in 1997 for land rights lost in Tarka, which was subsequently won a decade later.²²⁴

While the fishery profile remains high in Mossel Bay, including recreational fisheries where the harbour serves as a popular seasonal launch site for both charter and private vessels, both the industrial and small-scale commercial fishery sectors have contracted over time. Diminishing silver kob catches, high input costs, increasingly rigid policy and regulatory framework and a shortage of crew are some of the key challenges faced by fisheries operating out of Mossel Bay. Unlike the West Coast where sudden ecosystem regime shifts in the 2000s resulted in closures of many fishing communities, the shift of fishing communities to possible closure along the southern Cape coast has been a gradual manifestation over longer timeframes (Gammage, 2015).

Greater Mossel Bay urban complex: Hartenbos, Klein Brak River, Reebok, Tergniet and Groot Brak River

Location

The greater urban complex of Mossel Bay is located on the South Coast in the Western Cape (34°05'16"S, 22°08'52"E), under the jurisdiction of the Mossel Bay Local Municipality and Garden Route District Municipality. The communities of interest include the main places of Hartenbos, Klein Brak River, Reebok, Tergniet and Groot Brak River. Initially serving as farms in the colonial era, these outlying urban areas to Mossel Bay were developed into seasonal seaside holiday resorts with numerous permanent retirement communities.

Demographic attributes

For each community of interest, the Census 2011 data was as follows:

		Hartenbos	Klein Brak River	Reebok	Tergniet	Groot Brak River
General	Total Estimated Population (count)	4196	2037	1112	1263	10619
	Population Density (count per km ²)	173.39	590.57	373.01	455.29	481.41

²²³ The industrial fishery makes use of trawlers, while the small-scale commercial linefishery uses skiboats or deck boats.

²²⁴ See <https://eprop.co.za/commercial-property-news/item/8650-Mossel-Bay-land-claimants-rejoice-over-properties>

		Hartenbos	Klein Brak River	Reebok	Tergniet	Groot Brak River
	Number of Households (count)	1450	812	478	527	3148
	Males (%)	47%	50%	48%	46%	48%
	Females (%)	53%	50%	52%	54%	52%
	Female Headed Households (%)	29%	34%	21%	35%	39%
Population Age	Median Age (years)	42	45	58	54	32
	Under 5 years (%)	6%	5%	3%	3%	8%
	65 years and older (%)	23%	24%	34%	29%	12%
Population Group	Black African (%)	10%	6%	3%	2%	5%
	Coloured (%)	18%	26%	2%	16%	67%
	Indian/Asian (%)	0%	0%	0%	0%	0%
	White (%)	71%	68%	95%	82%	25%
	Other (%)	1%	0%	0%	0%	3%
First Language	Afrikaans (%)	93%	85%	88%	89%	91%
	English (%)	4%	13%	10%	10%	5%
	IsiXhosa (%)	1%	1%	0%	0%	1%
	Other (%)	2%	2%	2%	1%	3%
Employment Status	Unemployment Rate (%)	4%	3%	3%	5%	5%
	Youth Unemployment Rate (between 15 and 35 years old) (%)	2%	1%	1%	3%	3%
	Formally Employed (%)	22%	24%	18%	24%	20%
	Informally Employed (%)	4%	6%	4%	2%	6%
	Private household (%)	2%	4%	5%	3%	3%
	Retired/unknown (%)	73%	67%	73%	71%	71%
Families living below UBPL (Poverty Status)	Annual Household Income that is equal to or less than the UBPL (%)	20%	23%	18%	21%	43%
	Head of Household 64 years and younger (%)	21%	24%	12%	18%	35%
	Head of Household 65 years and older (%)	10%	11%	13%	11%	8%
Level of Education	No Schooling (%)	3%	2%	2%	2%	3%
	Completed Primary School (%)	3%	4%	1%	3%	5%
	Completed Secondary School (%)	29%	33%	41%	39%	21%
	Higher (%)	16%	16%	31%	22%	12%

Inventory of features

Across the five communities of interest, the infrastructure services are in good condition and basic services, shopping and retail facilities and satellite law enforcement and municipal services are

available. Larger administrative, municipal, retail, business and education services are based in the neighbouring urban centre of Mossel Bay. Within each community of interest, there are numerous seaside holiday accommodation options, ranging from resorts to caravan parks. There are also several restaurant and café options that include seafood-specialty items on their menus. Due to the popularity of this area as a seasonal holiday destination, particularly over the summer period, the towns are well-known for recreational fishing opportunities, particularly angling along the beaches or in the estuaries of Klein and Groot Brak River areas.²²⁵

The towns primarily serve the recreational fishing industry and there are various marine-related businesses largely relating to fishing tackle and bait, such as *Harten-Hengel Hartenbos*, *Hartenbos Sport* and *Go Fish Hartenbos* in Hartenbos, *Harten-Hengel Hengelgerei en Vars Aas* in Klein Brak River and *Grootbrak Kafee & Superette* in Groot Brak River. There are two public launch sites for smaller craft that are overseen by the local municipality – one is Klein Brak River and the other in Groot Brak River. Current users for these sites include recreational anglers and recreational boaters.

The features for each community of interest in terms of housing and services in 2011 is detailed below (Census 2011):

		Hartenbos	Klein Brak River	Reebok	Tergniet	Groot Brak River
Type of Dwelling	Formal (%)	98%	82%	100%	98%	92%
	Informal/other (%)	2%	18%	0%	2%	8%
Tenure Status	Owned and fully paid off (%)	42%	46%	58%	61%	62%
	Owned but not yet paid off (%)	4%	20%	3%	2%	5%
	Rented (%)	35%	21%	21%	26%	16%
	Occupied rent-free (%)	14%	11%	16%	10%	6%
Access to Amenities	Flush toilet connected to sewage and septic tank (%)	99%	81%	100%	98%	92%
	Weekly refuse removal (%)	97%	99%	99%	99%	99%
	Piped water inside dwelling (%)	94%	82%	100%	94%	85%
	Electricity for lighting (%)	98%	96%	99%	98%	94%

Involvement in fisheries

According to the fisher rights registration lists, there are three hake handline and two oyster active rights holders in Hartenbos, eight oyster active rights holders in Klein Brak River and 10 oyster and one hake handline active rights holders in Groot Brak River. While there is one rights holder registered for a fish processing establishment in Klein Brak River, it is likely that is a residential address and that the establishment is based in a larger commercial centre, such as Mossel Bay.

3.3.3. George Local Municipality

The George Local Municipality is the third largest municipality, in terms of population, in the Western Cape. The agriculture, forestry and fishing sector contributes 4.1 % to the municipal's GDP, with an average growth rate of 2.6 % over the last 10 years.²²⁶

²²⁵ See <https://www.suidkaapforum.com/News/Article/General/let-s-go-fishing-202012121054>

²²⁶ See <https://www.george.gov.za>

Wilderness

Location

The main place of Wilderness is located on the South Coast in the Western Cape (33°59'S 22°35'E), under the jurisdiction of the George Local Municipality and Garden Route District Municipality. Due to the natural beauty of the area, the town has traditionally a seaside resort, where a farmhouse (first established in the 1800s) was converted into a seaside boarding house.²²⁷ Our communities of interest include the sub places of Touwsrante, Wilderness Heights, Kleinkrantz and Wilderness.

Demographic attributes

For each community of interest, the Census 2011 data was as follows:

		Touwsrante	Wilderness Heights	Kleinkrantz	Wilderness
General	Total Estimated Population (count)	2245	80	620	1671
	Population Density (count per km ²)	4679.17	34.53	260.79	162.43
	Number of Households (count)	622	40	224	666
	Males (%)	50%	56%	51%	50%
	Females (%)	50%	44%	49%	50%
	Female Headed Households (%)	52%	8%	34%	31%
Population Age	Median Age (years)	26	61	31	67
	Under 5 years (%)	11%	3%	6%	3%
	65 years and older (%)	3%	35%	9%	24%
Population Group	Black African (%)	10%	6%	10%	11%
	Coloured (%)	89%	10%	68%	5%
	Indian/Asian (%)	0%	0%	2%	1%
	White (%)	0%	84%	19%	82%
	Other (%)	0%	0%	2%	1%
First Language	Afrikaans (%)	90%	59%	62%	45%
	English (%)	1%	35%	29%	49%
	IsiXhosa (%)	7%	0%	6%	1%
	Other (%)	2%	6%	3%	5%
Employment Status	Unemployment Rate (%)	12%	4%	13%	1%
	Youth Unemployment Rate (between 15 and 35 years old) (%)	7%	4%	7%	1%
	Formally Employed (%)	21%	15%	26%	27%
	Informally Employed (%)	6%	0%	5%	3%
	Private household (%)	8%	15%	5%	3%

²²⁷ See <https://www.sa-venues.com/attractionsgr/wilderness.php>

		Touwsranten	Wilderness Heights	Kleinkrantz	Wilderness
	Retired/unknown (%)	66%	70%	64%	67%
Families living below UBPL (Poverty Status)	Annual Household Income that is equal to or less than the UBPL (%)	7%	28%	38%	20%
	Head of Household 64 years and younger (%)	66%	25%	45%	15%
	Head of Household 65 years and older (%)	5%	0%	9%	11%
Level of Education	No Schooling (%)	5%	4%	2%	1%
	Completed Primary School (%)	12%	0%	7%	1%
	Completed Secondary School (%)	9%	41%	20%	28%
	Higher (%)	0%	33%	10%	32%

While the suburbs of Wilderness Heights, Kleinkrantz and Wilderness are located near or along the coast, the community of Touwsranten is situated 10 km inland from the seafront.

Inventory of features

The infrastructure services across the main place of Wilderness are in good condition and basic services, shopping and medical facilities, and satellite law enforcement and municipal services are available. As this area primarily serves as a holiday destination, school facilities are limited and a public primary school is located in the community of Touwsranten. Larger administrative, municipal, retail, business and education services are based in the neighbouring urban centre of Knysna (45 km away). As a popular holiday destination, there is a selection of small restaurants and pubs (including seafood), guesthouses and bed and breakfasts, mainly concentrated along the coast (excluding Touwsranten).

The features for each community of interest in terms of housing and services in 2011 is detailed below (Census 2011):

		Touwsranten	Wilderness Heights	Kleinkrantz	Wilderness
Type of Dwelling	Formal (%)	76%	90%	67%	99%
	Informal/other (%)	24%	10%	33%	1%
Tenure Status	Owned and fully paid off (%)	69%	63%	38%	58%
	Owned but not yet paid off (%)	21%	15%	26%	4%
	Rented (%)	9%	15%	23%	23%
	Occupied rent-free (%)	1%	10%	9%	11%
Access to Amenities	Flush toilet connected to sewage and septic tank (%)	92%	86%	66%	99%
	Weekly refuse removal (%)	92%	92%	99%	100%
	Piped water inside dwelling (%)	72%	79%	74%	98%
	Electricity for lighting (%)	58%	85%	96%	98%

As a popular seaside resort, recreational activities in Wilderness include hiking, mountain-biking, bird- and whale-watching, hang- and paragliding, horse riding, scenic drives, day tours, angling, boating and other water sports. The Wilderness beach is a popular surf and rock fishing area. Wilderness serves as a rescue base and Pink Rescue Buoy placement for the NSRI (NSRI, 2020). The Wilderness Lakes

System, a temporarily open and closed estuary with three associated lakes, contains the Island Lake Slipway that falls within the Wilderness National Park. Activities linked to this slipway include rowing, fishing, and other boat-related activities.²²⁸

Involvement in fisheries

According to the Western Cape Registration and Verification Results rights holders list, there are 10 small-scale fishers from the community of Touwsrante. It is likely that these rights holders travel to the coast (the nearest location being Wilderness at approximately 10 km away) to engage in fishing activities. Recreational fishing activities are popular along the coast, specifically angling from the beach or along the rocks in the Wilderness area.

3.3.4. Knysna Local Municipality

Knysna Local Municipality is one of the smallest municipalities of the seven that make up the Garden Route district, accounting for only 5 % of its geographical area. However, it has the fourth largest economy in the Garden Route District and boasts good infrastructure and basic services.²²⁹ The area is a very popular tourist destination.

Sedgefield urban complex: Sedgefield, Swartvlei and Montmere

Location

The urban complex of Sedgefield is located on the South Coast of the Western Cape (34°01'17"S, 22°48'12"E), under the jurisdiction of the Knysna Local Municipality and Garden Route District Municipality. The town originally served as a farm during the colonial period, which was then developed and proclaimed as a town in 1929. The town functions as a popular seasonal seaside resort that makes up the main economic activity of Sedgefield and it also services surrounding farming communities. For our communities of interest, the Sedgefield urban complex comprises of main places Sedgefield, Swartvlei and Montmere.

Demographic attributes

For each community of interest, the Census 2011 data was as follows:

		Sedgefield	Swartvlei	Montmere
General	Total Estimated Population (count)	8286	20	75
	Population Density (count per km²)	1055.24	27.46	22.85
	Number of Households (count)	3120	11	27
	Males (%)	49%	50%	53%
	Females (%)	51%	55%	47%
	Female Headed Households (%)	36%	67%	11%
Population Age	Median Age (years)	35	29	40
	Under 5 years (%)	8%	10%	5%
	65 years and older (%)	16%	5%	7%
Population Group	Black African (%)	25%	0%	0%

²²⁸ Permits are required for boats and are available from Wilderness National Park offices. See https://www.sanparks.org/parks/garden_route/

²²⁹ See <https://www.knysna.gov.za>

		Sedgefield	Swartvlei	Montmere
	Coloured (%)	29%	57%	77%
	Indian/Asian (%)	0%	0%	0%
	White (%)	43%	43%	23%
	Other (%)	3%	0%	0%
First Language	Afrikaans (%)	49%	90%	83%
	English (%)	27%	10%	16%
	isiXhosa (%)	18%	0%	0%
	Other (%)	6%	0%	1%
Employment Status	Unemployment Rate (%)	7%	14%	8%
	Youth Unemployment Rate (between 15 and 35 years old) (%)	5%	14%	0%
	Formally Employed (%)	23%	50%	40%
	Informally Employed (%)	3%	0%	24%
	Private household (%)	7%	17%	0%
	Retired/unknown (%)	66%	33%	36%
Families living below UBPL (Poverty Status)	Annual Household Income that is equal to or less than the UBPL (%)	36%	58%	65%
	Head of Household 64 years and younger (%)	39%	67%	56%
	Head of Household 65 years and older (%)	12%	0%	11%
Level of Education	No Schooling (%)	2%	0%	4%
	Completed Primary School (%)	4%	14%	15%
	Completed Secondary School (%)	26%	29%	23%
	Higher (%)	12%	0%	4%

Within the main place of Sedgefield, there is a large small-scale fishing community residing in the suburb of Smutsville. According to the Census 2011 data, this suburb was predominately made up of people of colour (52 % coloured, 44 % Black African and 4 % other population), where just over half of the population spoke Afrikaans (54 %) as their home language, followed by isiXhosa (34 %), 4 % other languages and 3 % English.

Inventory of features

The infrastructure services in the urban complex of Sedgefield are in good condition and basic services, shopping (including speciality retail stores) and medical facilities, and law enforcement and municipal services are available. The town also has a central business district and serves as a primary school educational hub. There are also a large number of retirement communities within the urban complex. Larger administrative, municipal, retail, business and secondary education services are based in the neighbouring urban centre of Knysna (25 km away). As a popular holiday destination, there is a selection of small restaurants and pubs (including seafood eateries), guesthouses, bed and breakfasts and caravan parks across the urban complex.

The features for each community of interest in terms of housing and services in 2011 is detailed below (Census 2011):

		Sedgefield	Swartvlei	Montmere
Type of Dwelling	Formal (%)	78%	100%	56%
	Informal/other (%)	22%	0%	44%
Tenure Status	Owned and fully paid off (%)	42%	9%	0%
	Owned but not yet paid off (%)	11%	82%	4%
	Rented (%)	30%	0%	89%
	Occupied rent-free (%)	13%	0%	0%
Access to Amenities	Flush toilet connected to sewage and septic tank (%)	95%	100%	56%
	Weekly refuse removal (%)	99%	100%	63%
	Piped water inside dwelling (%)	75%	100%	56%
	Electricity for lighting (%)	87%	100%	63%

Sedgefield is a regional hub for tourism, where it has a dedicated tourism office based in the town. The annual Slow Festival attracts visitors to the area, where boating and beach events take place.²³⁰ The area is popular for water sports and recreational fishing activities (mainly angling) along the local Swartvlei beach and in the Sedgefield lagoon. Swartvlei, located adjacent to the urban complex, is the largest and deepest lake in the Wilderness National Park and recreational boating activities (including related businesses²³¹) are popular activities in the area.²³² Sedgefield serves as a rescue base and Pink Rescue Buoy placement for the NSRI (NSRI, 2020). There is a slipway (Kingfisher Drive Slipway) located about 300m from the Sedgefield lagoon mouth that is used by local fishers and for recreational activities such as swimming, bait collecting, shore fishing and bird watching.

Involvement in fisheries

According to the Western Cape Registration and Verification Results rights holders list, there are 42 small-scale fishers registered in the community of Smutsville, a suburb located in the main place of Sedgefield. This community contains the Smutsville Sea Resources Operation Primary Cooperative.²³³ Other active rights holders in the Sedgefield urban complex include eight oyster rights holders. As a popular recreational fishing area, particularly for angling along the shoreline, fishing competitions regularly take place along the coastline between the Swartvlei River mouth (located in Sedgefield) and Wilderness.²³⁴

Rheenendal

Location

The main place of Rheenendal is located 20 km inland from the South Coast in the Western Cape (33°56'49"S, 22°55'49"E), under the jurisdiction of the Knysna Local Municipality and Garden Route

²³⁰ See <https://www.facebook.com/slowfestival.co.za/>

²³¹ See <https://www.facebook.com/Sedgefieldboathire-932949313435853/>

²³² See <https://www.travelground.com/attractions/swartvlei>

²³³ See <https://b2bhint.com/en/company/za/smutsville-sea-resources-operation-primary-co-operative-limited--C2021300317>

²³⁴ See <https://www.rasspl.com/southern-cape-fishing-sedgefield/>

District Municipality. This rural community is surrounded by agricultural land and indigenous forest. The area is best known for arts and crafts, restaurants, plant nurseries and outdoor adventures.²³⁵

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Rheenendal had 907 households and a population size of 3936 (7608.20 per km²), where 51 % were female and 49 % male. The town had a median age of 24 years. Most of the population identified as coloured (91 %), followed by 9 % Black African. Most residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (92 %), followed by 5 % isiXhosa, 1 % other languages and 1 % English. For residents of the town, 3 % had no schooling, 9 % had completed their primary education, 10 % had completed their secondary education and 1 % had attained a higher education degree. The unemployment rate was 17 %, while youth (15 – 35-year-olds) unemployment was 11 %. Where employed, 23 % were formally employed, 2 % were informally employed, 5 % were employed in a private household and 70 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 63 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011).

Inventory of features

The infrastructure services of Rheenendal are in fair condition with basic services available, including shopping and primary school facilities. Larger administrative, municipal, retail, business and education services are based in the neighbouring centre of Knysna (12 km away). The town mainly serves as a residential area for farm workers who work in the surrounding agricultural area. According to the Census 2011 data, most residents resided in formal housing (94 %), where 75 % owned their property without bond, 13 % lived in rentals and 10 % lived in rent-free housing. Most households had access to amenities such as electricity (96 %) and sewerage (96 %), while 50 % had access to piped water. All households had access to refuse removal services.

Involvement in fisheries

According to the Western Cape Registration and Verification Results rights holders list, there are six small-scale fishers registered in the Rheenendal. It is likely that these rights holders travel to the coast (the nearest coastal location being Buffelsbaai at approximately 25 km away) to engage in fishing activities.

Buffelsbaai

Location

The main place of Buffelsbaai is located on the South Coast in the Western Cape (34°05'S, 22°58'E), under the jurisdiction of the Knysna Local Municipality and Garden Route District Municipality. This small seaside village functions primarily as a seasonal vacation destination for local tourism, where it is a popular recreational angling destination.²³⁶

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Buffelsbaai had 19 households and a population size of 71 (86.80 per km²), where 54 % were female and 46 % male. The town had a median age of 29 years. Most of the population identified as coloured (72 %), followed by 27 % white and 1 % Black African. All residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language. For residents of the town, 4 % had no schooling, 9 % had completed their primary education, 13 % had completed their secondary education and 9 % had attained a higher education degree. The unemployment rate was 5 %. Where employed, 24 % were formally employed, 4 % were informally employed, 8 % were employed in a private household and 64 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 20 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011).

²³⁵ See <https://www.garden-route-info.co.za/routes/town/161/rheenendal>

²³⁶ See <https://www.garden-route-info.co.za/routes/town/141/buffalo-bay>

Inventory of features

The infrastructure services of Buffelsbaai are in good condition with basic services available, mainly catering for seasonal tourism. Administrative, municipal, retail, business and education services are based in the neighbouring centre of Knysna (20 km away). According to the Census 2011 data, all residents resided in formal housing, where 42 % owned their property without bond and 21 % with bond, 26 % lived in rentals and 5 % lived in rent-free housing. All households had access to amenities such as piped water (99 %), refuse removal (99 %) and electricity (97 %), while 83 % had access to sewerage facilities.

As a popular seaside village, there are a number of caravan parks, self-catering and holiday rental options available. Buffelsbaai Waterfront Restaurant offers seafood platter dishes and other meal options. The area is best known for its beaches and recreational activities such as swimming, surfing and fishing are popular.²³⁷ The beach at Buffelsbaai is a lifeguard post for NSRI (NSRI, 2020).

Involvement in fisheries

Recreational fishing activities are very popular in the area – both angling from the shore or boat-based. The town is home to the Buffalo Bay Ski Boat Club, which includes the Buffelsbaai slipway – a public launch site that is overseen by local municipality.

Knysna

Location

The main place of Knysna is located on the South Coast in the Western Cape (34°02'08"S, 23°02'56"E), under the jurisdiction of the Knysna Local Municipality and Garden Route District Municipality. The area was first inhabited by indigenous clans before the colonial period and its name is derived from the tribe of nomadic *!Kai Ikorana*, who settled in the area and named it after their chief *!Nyisna*. Once the first European settlers arrived in the 1760s, initially settling as a farming community that then moved into timber (including a short-lived gold rush) exploitation due to the vast indigenous forests that once grew along the Knysna estuary. In 1817, Knysna became a port for naval and commercial ships bringing supplies into the area, as well as for transporting shipments of timber out of the area.²³⁸ Today, the modern town of Knysna is primarily built on the northern shore of the large warm-water estuary known as the Knysna Lagoon. The estuary opens to the Indian Ocean after passing between two large headlands, which have become infamous due to the loss of boats and fishermen passing through their dangerous and unpredictable waters. The town has become a popular tourist, second home and retirement destination.²³⁹

The communities of interest within the main place of Knysna include the sub places of Knysna (excluding Hornlee and Xolweni), Hornlee and Xolweni. The sub place of Knysna forms part of the historical “whites only” area from the apartheid regime and Hornlee was traditionally a coloured settlement under the former regime. Xolweni is mainly an informal satellite township that mainly provides low-skilled labour for Knysna central and surrounds.

Demographic attributes

For each community of interest, the Census 2011 data was as follows:

		Knysna (excluding Hornlee and Xolweni)	Hornlee	Xolweni
General	Total Estimated Population (count)	42718	6666	1673
	Population Density (count per km ²)	7320.2	91.27	5927.93

²³⁷ See <https://www.buffelsbaai.co.za>

²³⁸ See <https://www.visitknysna.co.za/experiences/history-heritage/>

²³⁹ See <https://www.visitknysna.co.za>

		Knysna (excluding Hornlee and Xolweni)	Hornlee	Xolweni
	Number of Households (count)	14071	1651	648
	Males (%)	49%	48%	51%
	Females (%)	51%	52%	49%
	Female Headed Households (%)	34%	39%	33%
Population Age	Median Age (years)	29	31	26
	Under 5 years (%)	10%	10%	13%
	65 years and older (%)	8%	4%	1%
Population Group	Black African (%)	47%	4%	94%
	Coloured (%)	29%	93%	2%
	Indian/Asian (%)	1%	1%	0%
	White (%)	22%	1%	0%
	Other (%)	2%	1%	3%
First Language	Afrikaans (%)	40%	91%	3%
	English (%)	16%	5%	7%
	IsiXhosa (%)	38%	2%	82%
	Other (%)	6%	2%	8%
Employment Status	Unemployment Rate (%)	14%	14%	29%
	Youth Unemployment Rate (between 15 and 35 years old) (%)	9%	9%	20%
	Formally Employed (%)	24%	24%	20%
	Informally Employed (%)	3%	4%	5%
	Private household (%)	5%	6%	2%
	Retired/unknown (%)	69%	66%	74%
Families living below UBPL (Poverty Status)	Annual Household Income that is equal to or less than the UBPL (%)	40%	43%	87%
	Head of Household 64 years and younger (%)	52%	38%	84%
	Head of Household 65 years and older (%)	6%	5%	3%
Level of Education	No Schooling (%)	3%	2%	5%
	Completed Primary School (%)	5%	7%	5%
	Completed Secondary School (%)	21%	16%	22%
	Higher (%)	9%	6%	2%

The informal settlement of Xolweni had the highest poverty and unemployment rates in 2011, in comparison to the more established sub places of Knysna and Hornlee. While the populations in Knysna

and Hornlee mostly contain white and coloured communities, the Xolweni settlement is predominately Black Africa, where most residents most likely originated as job seekers from the Eastern Cape.²⁴⁰

For the coloured community of Knysna, which still predominately resides in Hornlee, their heritage is linked to the indigenous Khoikhoi groups of the Gouriqua, Attaqua and Gamtoos. The main industry in the area during the colonial times was forestry with limited employment opportunities and there were few agricultural opportunities. Therefore, due to limited employment and agricultural opportunities, the community who came to be considered coloured in Knysna traditionally earned a living as fishers and oyster collectors. While many coloured residents initially lived in Salt River and Paradise areas to the west of Knysna, these communities were forcibly removed in the 1950s due to the Group Areas Act and placed in the traditional coloured township of Hornlee, to the east of the town (Battersby, 2002).

Inventory of features

Knysna serves as a major shopping, retail, law enforcement, traffic, administrative, medical, retirement and educational hub for surrounding communities. This includes a regional DFFE office and a harbour that mainly serves as a luxury destination for ferry trips, yachts and charters. The infrastructure of the town is well developed with commercial and business centres, with a number of residential areas including estates, retirement villages and golf estates. While the town's economic activities and industrial development was dominated by the timber industry in the 20th and early 21st centuries, including shipbuilding and timber export industries, this has shifted to luxury developments along the Knysna marina. Today, the boat building industry still continues with several active boat yards in Knysna that produce luxury yachts, catamarans, and speedboats for the South African and export markets.²⁴¹

Residential infrastructure varies based on location and historic development patterns stemming from apartheid policies. Notably, infrastructure and service delivery are limited in the Xolweni settlement where over half of the population live in informal dwellings. The features for each community of interest in terms of housing and services in 2011 is detailed below (Census 2011):

		Knysna (excluding Hornlee and Xolweni)	Hornlee	Xolweni
Type of Dwelling	Formal (%)	70%	97%	55%
	Informal/other (%)	30%	3%	45%
Tenure Status	Owned and fully paid off (%)	56%	56%	20%
	Owned but not yet paid off (%)	13%	3%	63%
	Rented (%)	21%	26%	16%
	Occupied rent-free (%)	6%	14%	0%
Access to Amenities	Flush toilet connected to sewage and septic tank (%)	70%	99%	53%
	Weekly refuse removal (%)	93%	100%	98%
	Piped water inside dwelling (%)	66%	82%	47%
	Electricity for lighting (%)	89%	99%	70%

²⁴⁰ Following the repeal of the Coloured Labour Preference Policy in 1985, the proportion of Black African job seekers increased in areas such as Knysna due to work opportunities in industries such as the Thesens industrial development area and the close proximity of the town to the edge of the Labour Preference Area (Battersby, 2002).

²⁴¹ See <https://www.visitknysna.co.za>

The town is a popular destination for both domestic and international tourists with a dedicated local tourism bureau. There are numerous accommodation options, ranging from hotels, guesthouses, self-catering units, holiday rentals, backpackers to caravan sites and camping areas. The town's well-established tourism industry caters for the seafood experience, where there are a number of traditional seafood restaurants and eateries that promote fresh seafood such as linefish, calamari, prawns, crayfish and oysters. The Knysna area is world renowned for its oysters, which have traditionally been harvested along the coastline between the town and Buffelsbaai. This tradition is celebrated by the popular annual Knysna Oyster Festival.²⁴²

There are numerous recreational opportunities in the surrounding ocean, estuary, rivers and forest. Knysna serves as a rescue base and Pink Rescue Buoy placement for the NSRI (NSRI, 2020). While the area attracts large numbers of recreational fishers, other marine-related recreational activities include scuba diving and snorkelling at the popular dive site of the Paquita, a German sail ship that sank on the eastern side of the lagoon in 1903.²⁴³ Other attractions include the Knysna Museum's Angling Museum that displays traditional fishing gear and modern fishing equipment.²⁴⁴ The Knysna Waterfront is one of the most popular leisure and shopping destinations in the region that contains a marina, mainly catering for luxury yachts and serves as a gateway for cruises and luxury charters.²⁴⁵ There are several active boat clubs in the town, such as the Leisure Isle Boat Club²⁴⁶ and Knysna Yacht Club.²⁴⁷ Other popular marine-related businesses include deep sea fishing charters (for example, Garden Route Fishing Adventures) and whale watching cruises (for example, Eco Marine Adventures) that are based in the Knysna marina area.

Knysna is also well known for its estuary, which is the largest and most ecologically important estuary in South Africa. Classified as an estuarine bay, the Knysna Estuary is the only system of this kind in the country and is home to a number of critically endangered invertebrate species (mainly due to encroachment from urban and industrial development). It also serves as a critically important nursery for linefish such as kob and steenbras. This estuary makes an important contribution to the local fishing industry as it contributes 22 % of South Africa's estuarine value to commercial fishing. Furthermore, the Knysna Estuary provides an important food source for a large community of local full- and part-time subsistence fishers involved in bait collection, mud crab harvesting and fishing (DEFF, 2020a).

Involvement in fisheries

Commercial fishing activities operating out of Knysna are limited, mainly focusing on the handline fishery sector. According to the fisher rights registration lists, there are four traditional linefish and three hake handline active rights holders. However, the fishery profile within the traditional coloured community of Knysna is high. Within the traditional fishing community of Hornlee, there are 72 small-scale fishers registered according to the Western Cape Registration and Verification Results rights holders list.

3.3.5. Bitou Local Municipality

Tourism is the key economic activity for the Bitou Local Municipality, followed by manufacturing and trade and contraction. The area has become a sought-after residential location for retired persons and foreigners.²⁴⁸

²⁴² See <https://knysnaoysterfestival.co.za>

²⁴³ See <https://www.visitknysna.co.za>

²⁴⁴ See <https://www.knysnamuseums.co.za/pages/angling-collection/>

²⁴⁵ See <https://www.knysnawaterfront.co.za>

²⁴⁶ See <https://libcknysna.co.za>

²⁴⁷ See <https://www.knysnayachtclub.com>

²⁴⁸ See <https://www.bitou.gov.za>

Kranshoek

Location

The main place of Kranshoek is located on the South Coast in the Western Cape (34°05'28"S, 23°18'23"E), under the jurisdiction of the Bitou Local Municipality and Garden Route District Municipality. The community of Kranshoek was founded in the early 20th century by an indigenous Griqua group under the leadership of Chief Abraham le Fleur as their community was displaced by the British colonial authorities from their original homeland in Griqualand East (present day KwaZulu Natal).²⁴⁹

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Kranshoek had 1442 households and a population size of 5597 (454.09 per km²), with an even split between males and females. The town had a median age of 26 years. Over half of the population identified as coloured (53 %), followed by 36 % other population, 9 % Black African and 1 % Indian/Asian. Most residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (88 %), followed by 4 % isiXhosa, 4 % English and 4 % other languages. For residents of the town, 3 % had no schooling, 8 % had completed their primary education, 14 % had completed their secondary education and 1 % had attained a higher education degree. The unemployment rate was 18 %, while youth (15 – 35-year-olds) unemployment was 12 %. Where employed, 24 % were formally employed, 1 % were informally employed, 2 % were employed in a private household and 72 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 71 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011).

Inventory of features

The infrastructure services of Kranshoek are in fair condition with basic services available, including a local grocery and supermarket store, other small retail outlets, a tavern, a fish and chips eatery, a community centre and primary school facilities. Larger administrative, municipal, retail, business and education services are based in the neighbouring centre of Plettenberg Bay (10 km away). According to the Census 2011 data, most residents resided in formal housing (86 %), where 64 % owned their property without bond and 1 % with bond, 19 % lived in rentals and 14 % lived in rent-free housing. Most households had access to amenities such as electricity (98 %), refuse removal (98 %), sewerage (93 %) and piped water (83 %).

Involvement in fisheries

The community in Kranshoek has traditionally fished along the coast in the area since the establishment of the town. According to the Western Cape Registration and Verification Results rights holders list, there are 37 small-scale fishers registered in the Kranshoek. This fishing community contains the Kranshoek Small Scale Fishers Primary Cooperative.²⁵⁰

Part of the traditional fishing grounds for the Kranshoek community includes the Robberg MPA, located 10 km away in the Robberg Nature Reserve.²⁵¹ While shore fishing is allowed in the MPA, no boat-based fishing or spear fishing activities are permitted. Furthermore, the entrance fee to access the reserve is often too expensive for poor subsistence fishers from the Kranshoek community. Potential closures of specific parts of the coast or rezoning of popular fishing spots in the MPA into no take zones threaten the livelihoods of these traditional fishers.²⁵²

²⁴⁹ See <https://www.britannica.com/place/Griqualand-East>

²⁵⁰ See <https://b2bhint.com/en/company/za/kranshoek-small-scale-fishers-primary-co-operative-limited--C2020004548>

²⁵¹ See <https://www.marineprotectedareas.org.za/robberg-mpa>

²⁵² See <https://www.knysnaplettherald.com/News/Article/General/fishing-off-robberg-is-our-lifeline-20170921>

Plettenberg Bay urban complex: Kwanokuthula, New Horizons and Plettenberg Bay

Location

The urban complex of Plettenberg Bay is located on the South Coast in the Western Cape (34°03'S, 23°22'E), under the jurisdiction of the Bitou Local Municipality and Garden Route District Municipality. The area has a rich history associated with indigenous Khoisan tribes who lived in the area in pre-colonial times. During the colonial era, Portuguese explorers charted the bay area in the 15th and 16th centuries and white settlers subsequently arrived in the area and settled the area from the 1700s. The town was started as a woodcutters station in the 1780s due to the lucrative local timber trade and was formally named Plettenberg Bay in 1779. A whaling station operated from Beacon Island in Plettenberg Bay from 1910 to 1916, which was subsequently converted into a popular tourism resort from the 1940s.²⁵³ Today, Plettenberg Bay is a highly developed seaside resort that caters for both domestic and international tourism.

Our communities of interest include the main places of Kwanokuthula (located 6 km from Plettenberg Bay central) and New Horizons, as well as the main place of Plettenberg Bay, which is divided into the sub places of Pine Tree and Plettenberg Bay.

Demographic attributes

For each community of interest, the Census 2011 data was as follows:

		Kwanokuthula	New Horizons	Pine Tree	Plettenberg Bay
General	Total Estimated Population (count)	14008	9869	5683	792
	Population Density (count per km²)	5064.20	6016.65	303.70	48.11
	Number of Households (count)	5177	3234	2028	309
	Males (%)	49%	51%	48%	46%
	Females (%)	51%	49%	52%	54%
	Female Headed Households (%)	36%	36%	33%	27%
Population Age	Median Age (years)	26	27	47	57
	Under 5 years (%)	12%	10%	4%	7%
	65 years and older (%)	1%	2%	26%	15%
Population Group	Black African (%)	95%	36%	16%	6%
	Coloured (%)	3%	62%	4%	4%
	Indian/Asian (%)	0%	0%	1%	1%
	White (%)	0%	0%	77%	87%
	Other (%)	2%	1%	2%	2%
First Language	Afrikaans (%)	4%	61%	31%	35%
	English (%)	3%	4%	57%	58%
	isiXhosa (%)	85%	33%	5%	2%

²⁵³ See <https://www.plett-tourism.co.za/about/history/>

		Kwanokuthula	New Horizons	Pine Tree	Plettenberg Bay
	Other (%)	9%	2%	6%	5%
Employment Status	Unemployment Rate (%)	22%	24%	4%	4%
	Youth Unemployment Rate (between 15 and 35 years old) (%)	15%	15%	2%	2%
	Formally Employed (%)	21%	22%	27%	40%
	Informally Employed (%)	4%	2%	5%	7%
	Private household (%)	9%	5%	5%	5%
	Retired/unknown (%)	66%	70%	63%	48%
Families living below UBPL (Poverty Status)	Annual Household Income that is equal to or less than the UBPL (%)	79%	76%	28%	15%
	Head of Household 64 years and younger (%)	76%	73%	17%	17%
	Head of Household 65 years and older (%)	2%	3%	11%	4%
Level of Education	No Schooling (%)	2%	3%	1%	2%
	Completed Primary School (%)	5%	8%	2%	3%
	Completed Secondary School (%)	23%	17%	28%	27%
	Higher (%)	3%	2%	30%	33%

Under the apartheid regime, people of colour who resided in the early town of Plettenberg Bay were forcibly removed as the town was designated for whites only, where beach facilities were also segregated. People of colour were removed to the outskirts of the town in settlement areas such as New Horizons, Bossiesgif and Qolweni. New Horizons was established in 1968 due to the Group Areas Act and this historic coloured township opened without any infrastructure or basic services. The present-day informal settlement of Kwanokuthula contains many residents who were forcibly removed to segregated areas of Bossiesgif and Qolweni, and also hosts many job seekers from the Eastern Cape.²⁵⁴

Inventory of features

Plettenberg Bay serves as a major shopping, retail, law enforcement, traffic, administrative, medical, retirement and educational hub for surrounding communities. The town is also serviced by a small airport. The town has a dedicated tourism bureau. As a popular seaside resort, Plettenberg Bay is largely seasonal and a large portion of the urban area consists of second homes that are used exclusively during peak holiday seasons.

Residential infrastructure varies based on location and historic development patterns stemming from apartheid policies. The features for each community of interest in terms of housing and services in 2011 is detailed below (Census 2011):

		Kwanokuthula	New Horizons	Pine Tree	Plettenberg Bay
Type of Dwelling	Formal (%)	82%	51%	99%	94%
	Informal/other (%)	18%	49%	1%	6%
Tenure Status	Owned and fully paid off (%)	25%	40%	47%	32%

²⁵⁴ See <https://www.plett-tourism.co.za/about/history/>

		Kwanokuthula	New Horizons	Pine Tree	Plettenberg Bay
	Owned but not yet paid off (%)	8%	32%	5%	10%
	Rented (%)	52%	14%	30%	31%
	Occupied rent-free (%)	11%	13%	16%	23%
Access to Amenities	Flush toilet connected to sewage and septic tank (%)	99%	54%	99%	99%
	Weekly refuse removal (%)	99%	86%	97%	65%
	Piped water inside dwelling (%)	42%	46%	96%	88%
	Electricity for lighting (%)	99%	88%	99%	97%

Water sports are extremely popular in the area, where Plettenberg Bay has a long history of sport fishing that is either shore-based from the rocks or boat-based via skiboats that are typically launched from the central beach or in Keurbooms estuary. The town is home to national fishermen, league and club fisherman, a ski boat club, an angling club, fishing tackle shops, a bait shop, guiding and charter facilities.²⁵⁵ Plettenberg Bay serves as a rescue base and Pink Rescue Buoy placement for the NSRI (NSRI, 2020). The town also has a small boat harbour that is presently used for largely recreational purposes as it no longer hosts any fishing fleets.²⁵⁶ The Plettenberg Bay Ski Boat Club was first established in the early 1980s and is now the largest fishing club on the South Coast in the Western Cape.²⁵⁷ It is one of the few clubs in the country that still does a beach launch and manages this public launch site, overseen by the local municipality. There is a fisheries office in Plettenberg Bay that manages the designated landing site for permit holders.

Involvement in fisheries

According to the fisher rights registration lists, there are three hake longline and one squid active rights holders. There is one rights holder registered for a fish processing establishment in the town linked to the Robberg Group that specialises in wholesale distribution, retail, technical and logistical services to the fishing industry, the hospitality industry and the general public.²⁵⁸ Other marine-related business in the town include the Plettenberg Bay Fishing company.²⁵⁹

The coloured community historically based in Plettenberg Bay has traditionally fished along the coast in this area for a number of generations, where angling skills are typically passed down from father to son. The New Horizons fishing community traditionally relies on selling fish to families who have been holidaying in Plettenberg Bay for generations, where *gillies* are seen as tourism ambassadors and bait collectors. Similar to the fishing community in Kranshoek, the Robberg MPA forms part of the traditional fishing grounds for these communities, where proposed fishing closures threaten the livelihoods of these largely subsistence fishers.²⁶⁰

According to the fisher rights registration lists, active holders registered in New Horizons include five small-scale fishers, two commercial rights holders for oyster and one for traditional linefish. In the community of Kwanokuthula, there are nine registered small-scale fishers according to the Western Cape Registration and Verification Results rights holders list.

²⁵⁵ See <https://showme.co.za/plett/tourism/our-local-fishermen-welcome-you-to-pletttenberg-bay/>

²⁵⁶ See <https://www.knysnaplettherald.com/news/News/General/180762/Plett-harbour-What-residents-think>

²⁵⁷ See <https://www.plettskiboatclub.co.za>

²⁵⁸ See <https://www.robberg.co.za>

²⁵⁹ See <https://b2bhint.com/en/company/za/pletttenberg-bay-fishing--M1995008618>

²⁶⁰ See <https://www.knysnaplettherald.com/News/Article/General/fishing-off-robberg-is-our-lifeline-20170921>

Environmental threats have been noted in the Plettenberg Bay area due to the South African squid fishery that typically operates between Port Alfred and Tsitsikamma. While most squid fishing vessels have home ports in St Francis Bay and Gqeberha (formerly Port Elizabeth) in the Eastern Cape, these vessels can move to squid spawning sites that also traditionally occur in Plettenberg Bay. Environmental threats mainly stem from waste that is discarded from the squid fishing vessels that impact marine life and wash up on the local beaches.²⁶¹

Wittedrift

Location

The main place of Wittedrift is located 10 km inland from the South Coast in the Western Cape (34°00'26"S, 23°20'18"E), under the jurisdiction of the Bitou Local Municipality and Garden Route District Municipality. This semi-rural town originated from a farming community that settled the area as wood industrialists in the late 1700s under the colonial rule.²⁶²

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Wittedrift had 479 households and a population size of 1822 (1138.07 per km²), with an even split between males and females. The town had a median age of 26 years. Most of the population identified as coloured (62 %), followed by 21 % Black African, 15 % white and 1 % Indian/Asian. Most residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (84 %), followed by 9 % English, 5 % isiXhosa and 2 % other languages. For residents of the town, 4 % had no schooling, 7 % had completed their primary education, 13 % had completed their secondary education and 4 % had attained a higher education degree. The unemployment rate was 11 %, while youth (15 – 35-year-olds) unemployment was 7 %. Where employed, 25 % were formally employed, 6 % were informally employed, 3 % were employed in a private household and 65 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 58 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011).

Inventory of features

The infrastructure services of Wittedrift are in good to fair condition with basic services available, mainly providing agricultural processing facilities, as well as labour and education services to the surrounding agricultural community. Larger administrative, municipal, retail, business and education services are based in the neighbouring centre of Plettenberg Bay (12 km away). According to the Census 2011 data, most residents resided in formal housing (78 %). Approximately 27 % owned their property without bond and 6 % with bond, 13 % lived in rentals and 1 % lived in rent-free housing (the remainder 52 % fell under other tenure arrangements). Most households had access to amenities such as refuse removal (96 %), electricity (89 %), sewerage (79 %) and piped water (71 %).

Involvement in fisheries

According to the Western Cape Registration and Verification Results rights holders list, there is one small-scale fisher registered in Wittedrift. It is likely that the fisher travels to the coast (the nearest location being Keurboomstrand at approximately 10 km away) to engage in fishing activities.

Kurland

Location

The main place of Kurland is located 10 km inland from the South Coast in the Western Cape (33°56'45"S, 23°29'39"E), under the jurisdiction of the Bitou Local Municipality and Garden Route District Municipality. The village is a rural township that supplies seasonal, low-skilled labour to

²⁶¹ See <https://showme.co.za/plett/showme-cares/environmentconservation/large-quantities-of-squid-fishery-associated-pollution-on-plett-beaches/>

²⁶² See <https://wittedriftschool.co.za/history/>

surrounding holiday areas and farms, characterised by high levels of poverty, substance abuse and malnutrition issues.²⁶³

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Kurland had 1261 households and a population size of 4033 (3244.90 per km²), with an even split between males and females. The town had a median age of 26 years. Over half of the population identified as coloured (58 %), followed by 31 % Black African and 10 % other population. Most residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (70 %), followed by 25 % isiXhosa, 3 % other languages and 2 % English. For residents of the town, 5 % had no schooling, 8 % had completed their primary education, 11 % had completed their secondary education and 1 % had attained a higher education degree. The unemployment rate was 20 %, while youth (15 – 35-year-olds) unemployment was 14 %. Where employed, 19 % were formally employed, 6 % were informally employed, 5 % were employed in a private household and 70 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 81 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011).

Inventory of features

The infrastructure services of Kurland are in fair condition with basic services available, including primary school facilities. Larger administrative, municipal, retail, business and education services are based in the neighbouring centre of Plettenberg Bay (20 km away). According to the Census 2011 data, just over half of the residents resided in formal housing (54 %), where 37 % owned their property without bond and 4 % with bond, 35 % lived in rent-free housing and 9 % lived in rentals. Most households had access to amenities such as refuse removal (99 %), sewerage (98 %), electricity (92 %) and piped water (60 %).

Involvement in fisheries

According to the Western Cape Registration and Verification Results rights holders list, there are 19 small-scale fishers registered in Kurland. This fishing community contains the Kurland Fisheries Primary Cooperative.²⁶⁴ It is likely that the rights holder travels to the coast (the nearest location being Nature's Valley at approximately 12 km away) to engage in fishing activities. This area borders the the Tsitsikamma MPA, the oldest MPA in South Africa. This MPA is a no take zone for fishing, except for 20 % of the shoreline where local community members are allowed to fish.²⁶⁵

Covie

Location

The main place of Covie is located 2 km inland in the Tsitsikamma National Park²⁶⁶ on the South Coast in the Western Cape (33°57'40"S, 23°36'4"E), under the jurisdiction of the Bitou Local Municipality and Garden Route District Municipality. The village of Covie was established in 1883 in the Tsitsikamma forests as a woodcutter's settlement. A small fishing community subsequently developed down at the coast at the mouth of the Sout Rivier who were members of the Covie community, where wooden rowing boats (known as *skuite*) were used in addition from angling activities along the rocks. However, the gradual decline of the timber industry and imposed restrictions due to the conservation measures and the Group Areas Act resulted in many families to be dispossessed of their land rights from the 1970s. For example, the proclamation of the Tsitsikamma National Park in 1964 led to the Covie community losing access to their traditional fishing grounds (Williams, 2013).

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Covie had 109 households and a population size of 312 (0.22 per km²), where 51 % were female and 49 % male. The town had a median age of 33 years. Over half of

²⁶³ See <https://www.dailymaverick.co.za/article/2019-05-17-hunger-aplenty-on-the-fringe-of-seaside-luxury/>

²⁶⁴ See <https://b2bhint.com/en/company/za/kurland-fisheries-primary-co-operative-limited--C2020004499>

²⁶⁵ See <https://www.marineprotectedareas.org.za/tsitsikamma-mpa>

²⁶⁶ See <https://www.nature-reserve.co.za/tsitsikamma-coastal-national-park.html>

the population identified as coloured (57 %), followed by 36 % white, 4 % Black African, 3 % other population and 1 % Indian/Asian. Most residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (65 %), followed by 28 % English, 5 % other languages and 3 % isiXhosa. For residents of the town, 2 % had no schooling, 2 % had completed their primary education, 22 % had completed their secondary education and 17 % had attained a higher education degree. The unemployment rate was 11 %, while youth (15 – 35-year-olds) unemployment was 8 %. Where employed, 28 % were formally employed, 10 % were informally employed, 5 % were employed in a private household and 58 % were retired (or of unknown employment status). Approximately 33 % of households reported an annual household income that was equal to or less than the UBPL (StatsSA, 2011).

Inventory of features

For the original settlement of Covie, this area has seen little development due to neglect over the years. The area is accessible by a gravel road and the settlement is characterised by scattered self-built houses, where most of the community members who descended from the original settlers are coloured (Williams, 2013). All administrative, municipal, retail, business and education services are based in the neighbouring centre of Plettenberg Bay (38 km away). According to the Census 2011 data, most residents resided in formal housing (94 %), where 57 % owned their property without bond and 11 % with bond, 23 % lived in rentals and 6 % lived in rent-free housing. Most households had access to amenities such as electricity (94 %), refuse removal (83 %) and sewerage (63 %), while 55 % had access to piped water.

Due to historic dispossession and marginalisation, the remaining Covie community members launched a land claim in 1998, which included compensation for the coastal strip that was incorporated into the Tsitsikamma National Park that originally allowed the community access to the sea for fishing, forming part of their livelihoods, culture, identity and community life (Williams, 2013). The Tsitsikamma MPA was subsequently rezoned in 2016 to allow limited fishing by members of local communities along 20 % of the shoreline.²⁶⁷ In 2021, the Covie land claim was successfully awarded and the government handed back more than 764 000 hectares of land that will positively impact 411 households.²⁶⁸

Involvement in fisheries

According to the Western Cape Registration and Verification Results rights holders list, there are 14 small-scale fishers registered in Covie. This fishing community contains the Covie Fishing United Primary Cooperative.²⁶⁹ In partnership with Nature's Valley Trust and the Plettenberg Bay Angling Association, a fishing club was launched in 2017 with the Covie community wishing to move towards more sustainable fishing practices.²⁷⁰

²⁶⁷ See <https://old.mpatlas.org/mpa/sites/67704841/>

²⁶⁸ See <https://www.news24.com/news24/southafrica/news/deputy-president-hands-land-back-to-covie-community-says-their-human-dignity-has-been-restored-20210430>

²⁶⁹ See <https://b2bhint.com/en/company/za/covie-fishing-united-primary-co-operative-limited--C2020004564>

²⁷⁰ See <https://www.naturesvalleytrust.co.za/programmes/ecological-research/coastal-impact-programme-sharetheshores/fishing-research-2/>

4. Highlighted Gaps and Recommendations

4.1. Overview

Fishing communities in the Western Cape represent a myriad of histories and social complexities across different scales and fishing sectors. Within a geographical footprint of a town, communities are not homogenous in terms of access to services and social capital, where social cohesion is at odds with historical apartheid legacies and present-day marginalisation in terms of fishing policy. While living at street level within a particular place, fishing communities are influenced and thus operate across different scales – from global scales involving ecological regime shifts that influence marine species distribution, international crime syndicates and the Covid-19 global pandemic, to national scales from where policy is dictated, to municipal scales that determine employment opportunities through targeted development pathways, to local scales that incorporate social ills and historical inequalities.

The fishing sector in the Western Cape is labour intensive, giving it an important livelihood dimension. However, this sector has been shrinking over time and as pressure increases on scarce economic opportunities, industrial and traditional fishing communities have been placed under increasing pressure. Communities involved in subsistence and small-scale fisheries are most marginalised in terms of historical development and policy and are therefore typically characterised by high poverty and unemployment rates and social ills, which are particularly prevalent in communities of colour. Diminishing marine species and subsequent quota regulations have also placed added pressures on poorer fishing communities, fuelling high levels of IUU fishing and poaching activities in the Western Cape.

Fishing communities linked to industrial fishing towns are under pressure as factory closures and/or scaling down of industrial fishing activities leave some coastal towns without an employment base, forcing households to divide to look for job opportunities elsewhere. Fishing also forms an important cultural identity for many communities traditionally involved in fisheries over several generations (particularly on the West Coast), which can also result in a reluctance to leave the sector (even for youth). The historical favouring of industrial fisheries has led to the over-exploitation of many marine stocks, largely at the expense of small-scale fishing communities, which has led to conflict between different fishery sectors where fishing grounds overlap (particularly in the inshore regions along the coast).

Key stressors that emerged from the community profiles across the Western Cape can be grouped into the broad categories of:

- **Environmental** (diminishing marine resources, ecological regime shifts, historical and present-day overfishing)
- **Political** (historical exclusion and marginalisation of communities of colour and small-scale fishing sectors, high-level corruption at national scale, policy uncertainty, exclusionary conservation measures (MPAs), blanket policy that does not take local context into consideration (e.g., quota restrictions))
- **Economic** (conflict between fishery sectors (small-scale vs inshore trawl), new entrants vs traditional fishers, monopolised seafood value chains (middlemen), IUU fishing and poaching (including crime syndicates), coastal gentrification)
- **Social** (historical inequalities (colonial and apartheid), cultural identity (reluctance to leave the fishing sector), limited capacity amongst marginalised fishers, poverty traps, unemployment (youth), health issues, drug and alcohol abuse, female-headed households (more vulnerable))

Considering these pressures and challenges interacting across multiple scales, the question remains on whether fishing can continue to sustain the current system or whether different approaches are required to restructure the future of fisheries in the Western Cape.

4.2. Challenges

The following challenges were experienced when putting together this report:

4.2.1. Covid impacts

The Covid-19 pandemic is a global crisis with devastating health, economic, and social consequences across South Africa. As the pandemic is ongoing, the full extent of its impact has yet to be realised, where economic lockdowns and loss of life will profoundly affect communities and livelihoods. The national unemployment rate has already risen to one of the highest in the world in 2021.²⁷¹ Vulnerable and marginalised groups are more likely to bear the brunt of the pandemic, where lockdown measures to combat the spread of the virus will push these groups further into poverty. Food insecurity is a key issue. While small-scale food producers and informal traders provide access to food in their communities, the government has failed to invest in this sector. For example, the already underfunded fisheries management branch received an R88 million cut in 2020, thus undermining the importance of small-scale fishers in ensuring food, nutrition and income security within South African communities.

Some of the hardest-hit sectors include tourism and export, which has huge ramifications for local fishing communities. This is particularly evident for festival events, where (for example) important annual events such as the Hermanus Whale Festival have been postponed in 2021 due to the pandemic. In another example, lockdown and export restrictions due to Covid-19 have resulted in annual income loss for small-scale fishers in the Western and Northern Cape generated from catching and selling rock lobster. These fishers missed an entire season of their most high-value species in 2020, where curbs on exports to China and the USA highlighted the fragility of long export chains. Another example is in Arniston, where women in fisher communities bear a double burden of raising families and ensuring household income. These women typically sell crafts and jams/pickles to tourists and clean and package fish; however, due to lockdown restrictions, the tourist market and their income were lost.²⁷² A recent WWF report²⁷³ details the lessons learnt from lockdowns in South African fisheries, where (importantly) it is noted that the industrial fishing sector was better equipped to handle the impacts of lockdown restrictions as these stakeholders tended to have access to finances, networks and other resources. This report found that small-scale fishers had much greater difficulty adapting to the sudden changes and limitations in operations due to lockdown restrictions.

Due to the lack of longer-term data, the impacts of Covid-19 on fishing communities are not well known yet. However, it is likely to have far-reaching and long terms consequences. This will have to be considered and incorporated when researching vulnerabilities within the Western Cape's fishing communities.

4.2.2. Data availability

The national census data used to describe community characteristics for these community profiles is a decade old and therefore outdated. The next population census is scheduled to take place in 2021 – however, this may be delayed due to restrictions associated with Covid-19. Once the new census data are available, the community profiles should be updated accordingly. Particularly in the face of the pandemic, many inequalities and vulnerabilities have likely increased in our fishing communities.

Further, South Africa has delayed the renewal and issuance of new commercial fishing permits (initially set to expire in 2020 until 2021 to allow DFFE to address ongoing concerns on exclusion in previous

²⁷¹ See <https://www.aljazeera.com/economy/2021/8/24/south-africas-unemployment-rate-is-now-the-worlds-highest>

²⁷² See <https://documentcloud.adobe.com/link/track?uri=urn%3Aaaid%3Aascds%3AUS%3Ab4460c50-6a80-4627-b811-7ee4209cb776#pageNum=2>

²⁷³ See https://wwfafrica.awsassets.panda.org/downloads/wwf_small_scale_fisheries_impact.pdf?36022/Building-resilience-in-small-scale-fishing-communities

allocations from fishing communities.²⁷⁴ The commercial fishing rights are for the 12 sectors of KZN prawn trawl, demersal shark, tuna-pole line, hake handline, line fish, white mussels, oysters, squid, small pelagics (pilchard and anchovy), hake deep-sea trawl, hake longline, and south coast rock lobster. Once these rights have been renewed, this should be updated in our community profiles for the Western Cape.

4.2.3. Community grouping

For this report, fishing communities were grouped according to Main Place based on StatsSA to align with the best available population data at the household level. However, issues of grouping communities based on Main Place only means that for smaller towns where wealthier areas are grouped with poorer settlement areas, the true extent of poverty and unemployment rates are difficult to discern. Given the historical legacy of spatial inequalities stemming from the apartheid, many fishing communities of interest reside in settlement or township areas. It is important to note that the underlying challenge is that there is not a clear sense of what constitutes a “fishing community” in South Africa. Once communities of fishers can be clearly defined, it may be of use to compare different socio-economic areas separately to understand better access to services, education and general capacity of these individual communities. However, challenges arise from the publicly available census data as it is limited in how it is organised. It is therefore recommended that collaborations be explored with units such as the Southern Africa Labour and Development Research Unit (SALDRU) and Council of Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR), who may have access to finer-scale data. This may assist in addressing some of the challenges presented by the (limiting) scales of the publicly available census data.

Another challenge to note is that community does not necessarily imply a homogenous group of people living together but can be divided according to apartheid inequalities, socio-economic status, different development interests, mistrust of outsiders or new entrants into the fishery, perceptions of entitlement to resources based on heritage, etc. This is particularly evident in small-scale fishery co-operatives, where at times these enterprises will fail based on a lack of cohesion between members from the same fishing community (for example, see work carried out by Nthane (2015) in Lamberts Bay).

4.2.4. Small-scale fishing policy

The ongoing delay in the implementation of the Policy for the Small Scale Fisheries Sector is problematic, and the process of awarding fishing rights was set aside for the Western Cape in 2021 due to major flaws.²⁷⁵ The available data on small-scale fishers will need to therefore be updated once the new verification process is complete. This is an important consideration for the fishing community profiles as many of these communities contain traditional fishers reliant on small-scale fisheries for their livelihoods (Isaacs, 2006, Sowman, 2006). In the future, having up-to-date and accurate fisher community profiles can greatly assist in understanding the complex fishing sector and how coastal communities operate within it. Fishery policy cannot be rolled out based on self-identification, and stakeholder engagement needs to be inclusive of the local context to ensure that all relevant participants are included (Sowman et al., 2014). The delayed and flawed verification process across fishery policy is a symptom of stakeholder engagement carried out in silos, where there is a lack of collaboration when working across groups/individuals (Sowman and Sunde, 2021).

Small-scale fishing communities are also complex in that there is usually limited capacity due to low literacy levels in these communities, where the median age is 44 years. Furthermore, limited infrastructure persisting inequalities and present-day marginalisation within the value chain also hamper small-scale fishing communities. While national small-scale fisheries management promotes developing small-scale co-operatives within fishing communities, these are generally hampered by the

²⁷⁴ See <https://www.seafoodsource.com/news/supply-trade/south-africa-s-cabinet-delays-fishing-rights-allocation-to-2021>

²⁷⁵ See <https://www.seafoodsource.com/news/supply-trade/south-africa-fisheries-minister-wants-court-to-review-fishing-rights-process>

lack of capacity of fishers to run business entities, their marginalised role in the wider value chain, and not all communities being cohesive social entities.²⁷⁶

Keeping policy and regulation for the overall fisheries branch at the national level may also be ineffective, particularly due to the erosion of capabilities within the State over the past two decades and prevalent, high-level corruption that has left the administration with many vacancies and limited funds. Rather than keeping a top-down approach that is easily corrupted, some fisheries responsibilities could be devolved to lower levels of government, such as district and local municipalities. A move towards an integrated management model that considers both fishing sectors and marine ecosystems could assist with the bottlenecks experienced at national level (for example, refer to Gammage and Jarre (2021)). This could be further explored through the District Development Model – an integrated planning model for Cooperative Governance that aims to be a new integrated, district-based, service delivery approach to fast-track service delivery and ensure that municipalities are adequately supported and resourced.²⁷⁷

4.3. Recommendations

The following recommendations are made from this report:

4.3.1. Ground truthing profiles

As our community profiles were developed using secondary information, it is necessary to ground truth select profiles to provide insight into what the profiles captured and missed in terms of community involvement in fishing. Particularly due to the Covid-19 pandemic, some services and businesses may have changed in the communities, and some households may have left fishing due to market closures and/or family deaths. Ground truthing would provide an opportunity to take a detailed inventory of features and provide a way to check the accuracy of information in the secondary profiles. This is important as the demographic and other data may be outdated. For example, references to land claims in the Eland Bay community have been made (see Isaacs and Hara (2008); however, it is unclear whether these claims have been resolved from our desktop analysis.

As small-scale fishers feature strongly in the local context but have a history of marginalisation, these communities could be one area of interest. Towns that have an active fishery profile in terms of rights allocation but are located a distance away from the coast should also be considered to establish links to the fishery sector and locate fishing grounds. Another group of interest could be fishing communities linked to labour in industrial fisheries, particularly as these operations shrink over time with implications for local livelihoods – whether communities stay within the fisheries sector (or diversify into aquaculture) or whether they leave fishing for alternative livelihoods.

4.3.2. Expanding profile selection

It is recommended that the following inland communities be added to the profile selection based on active rights holders registered in the towns listed below (expanded profiles are located in Annex 1):

District Municipality	Local Municipality	Community (based on Main Place)	Number of fishery Rights holders (from fisher rights registration lists)
West Coast	Matzikama	Vredendal	1 fish processing establishment, 1 seaweed
	Swartland	Darling	10 small-scale fishers, 1 traditional linefish
Cape Winelands	Langeberg	Robertson	1 fish processing establishment, 1 traditional linefish
Overberg	Overstrand	Stanford	42 small-scale fishers, 3 abalone, 3 West Coast rock lobster (nearshore)

²⁷⁶ See <https://pmg.org.za/committee-meeting/31431/>

²⁷⁷ See <https://www.cogta.gov.za/ddm/>

4.3.3. Fishing profiles for the Cape Town metropolitan area

Community profiles for fishing communities located in the metropolitan area of Cape Town should be developed alongside our profiles to complete the Western Cape. This essentially would complete four district-level areas that cover different fishing communities along the coast. A similar approach can be used for Cape Town, where fishing sectors can be examined at three different scales – district (metropolitan), local municipality and community level. Communities can be determined according to Main Place as per StatsSA and selected based on registration given in fisher rights lists.

4.3.4. Unpacking fishing dependency at community level

Fishing dependency is poorly understood in terms of communities that may depend on fisheries, whereas in countries such as the United Kingdom, fishing activity and economic data are used to define such communities (DEFRA, 2021). However, these communities should be defined beyond fishing activity and economic data, where community typologies could be defined based on the relationship between the fishing sector and place. This can be further expanded to *virtual* and *real* fishing industries – where *real* fishing dependent communities are product-based (i.e., reflects the major place occupied in communities by the fishers and fishing-related industries), while *virtual* fishing dependent communities are image-based (i.e., serves as an icon or branding mechanism to encourage the tourist industry and niche markets for fishing products) (DEFRA, 2021). The concept of a fishing dependent community is therefore complex, where this concept can be informed by both quantitative (e.g., fishing fleet size, fish landings, geographic distribution, demographic data, etc.) and qualitative (e.g., sense of place (linked to fishing history), the relationship between fishing and cultural ecosystem services, etc.) indicators. As many of the communities in our profiles are intertwined with real and virtual fishing dependency that is informed by pre-colonial and colonial histories, shaped by spatial inequalities, driven by past and present policies, and determined by market forces – finding a balance between quantitative and qualitative indicators to better understand these complex spaces is important.

4.3.5. Transformation in fisheries and alternative livelihoods

An analysis could be undertaken to better understand how/if different fisheries sectors have transformed and the impact/implications this has on fishing communities. Specifically, this could focus on the small-scale fishery and large-scale industrial fishery sectors. Both of these sectors have important livelihood dimensions – from food security to labour-intensive aspects. The continuing delay of implementing the small-scale fisheries policy in the Western Cape province as a whole and the shrinking industrial fisheries on the west coast have important consequences for poorer communities along the coast dependent on these sectors.

Furthermore, with the dwindling marine resource base, consideration needs to be given to the fate of intensive versus small-scale fishing practices (especially where fishing grounds overlap) and what alternative livelihoods would mean to fishing communities. While tourism is present in most of the coastal communities in the Western Cape, the seasonality of tourism and possible long-term implications of Covid-19 need to be further investigated in terms of alternative livelihoods. For example, since 2019 WWF has been working with small-scale fishing communities in the Kogelberg area (Pringle Bay, Betty's Bay and Kleinmond) to explore alternative livelihoods for fishing communities such as marine monitors and assisting with conservation research.²⁷⁸ As documented around the world, switching from wild capture fisheries to aquaculture also presents challenges in terms of environmental impacts and resistance from traditional fishers, which could also be further explored in this specific context.

²⁷⁸ See https://www.environment.gov.za/mediarelease/creecy_covid19outreach_kogelbergfishingcommunity

5. Concluding Remarks

The development of these community profiles for identified fishing communities in South Africa's Western Cape lays the foundation to build and establish a prototype set of social indicators relating to human wellbeing, social vulnerability and resilience in coastal communities as a contribution to the H2020 TRIATLAS project. The snapshot provided of the identified fishing communities provides valuable background information and histories to how fishing communities have evolved over time in the Western Cape Province, thus creating a better understanding of how these communities are structured and operate within complex systems driven by interlinking stressors that cascade over multiple temporal and spatial scales. Our profiles add valuable context on marine activities occurring at finer scales with the BCLME that are not necessarily uniform and vary depending on environmental, political, economic and social stressors. This information aims to contribute to a better understanding of these finer scales that can be used to inform management and policy decisions that are locally relevant to address compliance challenges and promote sustainability within marine SES.

References

- ABALOBI 2020. *2020 Impact Report*. Available: <http://abalobi.org/wp-content/uploads/2021/07/ABALOBI-2020-IMPACT-REPORT.pdf>
- AgriProbe 2010. *Vol 7 No 2*. Available: <https://www.elsenburg.com/resource-library/agriprobe>
- AgriProbe 2021. *Vol 18 No 2*. Available: <https://www.elsenburg.com/resource-library/agriprobe>
- Anchor Environmental 2020. *The State of St Helena Bay 2020. St Helena Bay Water Quality Trust 2020*. Available: <https://anchorenvironmental.co.za/sites/default/files/2020-11/St%20Helena%20Bay%20SOB%202020.pdf>
- Averweg, U.R. and Leaning, M. 2018. *Revisiting the term 'community' in the South African context. Law Society of South Africa*. De Rebus, DR 18. Available: <https://www.derebus.org.za/revisiting-the-term-community-in-the-south-african-context/>
- Averweg U.R and Leaning M. 2015. The Use of “Community” in South Africa’s 2011 Local Government Elections. *Africa Spectrum*, 50(2): 101-111.
- Avery, G. 1974. Open Station Shell Midden Sites and Associated Features from the Pearly Beach Area, South-Western Cape. *The South African Archaeological Bulletin*, 29(115/116): 104-114.
- Battersby, J. 2002. A Question of Marginalization: Coloured Identities and Education in the Western Cape, South Africa. *D.Phil thesis*, University of Oxford.
- Bergrivier Municipality, 2020. *Draft Annual Report 2019/20*. Available: <http://www.bergmun.org.za/resource-category/annual-reports>
- Biggs, R., Carpenter, S. R. and Brock, W. A. 2009. Turning back from the brink: Detecting an impending regime shift in time to avert it. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 106: 826-831.
- Blamey, L. K., Howard, J. a. E., Agenbag, J. and Jarre, A. 2012. Regime-shifts in the southern Benguela shelf and inshore region. *Progress in Oceanography*, 106: 80-95.
- Branch, G.M., Hauck, M., Siqwana-Ndulo, N. and Dye, A.H. 2002. Defining fishers in the South African context: subsistence, artisanal and small-scale commercial sectors. *South African Journal of Marine Science*, 24(1): 475-487.
- Cape Agulhas Municipality 2017. *Spatial Development Framework 2017 – 2022*. Available: http://www.capeagulhas.gov.za/sites/default/files/documents/CAM%20SDF%20July%202017%20FINAL_submitted.pdf
- Cardoso, P., Fielding, P. and Sowman, M. 2005. Overview And Analysis of Social, Economic and Fisheries Information to Promote Artisanal Fisheries Management in the BCLME Region – South Africa. Available: <http://archive.iwlearn.net/bclme.org/projects/docs/Final%20report%20AFSE-03-01%20SA%20overview.pdf>
- Cederberg Municipality 2020. *Annual Report for 2019 – 2020*. Available: <http://www.cederbergmun.gov.za/resource-category/annual-reports>
- Clay, P.M. and Olson, J. 2007. Defining Fishing Communities: Issues in Theory and Practice. *NAPA BULLETIN*, 28: 27-42.

Colburn, L.L., Clay, P.M., Olson, J., Pinto da Silva, P. Smith, S.L., Westwood, A. and Ekstrom, J. 2010. *Community Profiles for Northeast U.S. Marine Fisheries*. NOAA Fisheries. Available: <https://apps-nefsc.fisheries.noaa.gov/read/socialsci/pdf/community-profiles/introduction.pdf>

Colburn, L.L. and Jepson, M. 2012. Social indicators of gentrification pressure in fishing communities: A context for social impact assessment. *Coastal Management*, 40: 289–300.

Colburn, L.L., Jepson, M., Weng, C., Seara, T., Weiss, J. and Hare, J. A. 2016. Indicators of climate change and social vulnerability in fishing dependent communities along the Eastern and Gulf Coasts of the United States. *Marine Policy*, 74: 323-333.

Currie, J. C., Atkinson, L.J., Sink, K.J. and Attwood, C.G. 2020. Long-Term Change of Demersal Fish Assemblages on the Inshore Agulhas Bank Between 1904 and 2015. *Frontiers in Marine Science*, 7: 355.

Dennis, T.L. 2009. *Perceptions of History and Policy in the Cape Agulhas Area: could History influence Policy on Small-Scale Fishing?* MPhil, University of the Western Cape.

Department of Agriculture Forestry and Fisheries (DAFF) 2015. *Proclaimed Fishing Harbours*. Available: https://www.daff.gov.za/doaDev/sideMenu/fisheries/03_areasofwork/Aquaculture/Fishing%20Harbours.pdf

Department of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries (DEFF) 2020a. *National Environmental Compliance and Enforcement Report 2019-20*. Available: https://www.gov.za/sites/default/files/gcis_document/202011/environmental-compliance-2020-report.pdf

Department of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries (DEFF) 2020b. *Status of the South African marine fishery resources 2020*. Available: https://www.environment.gov.za/sites/default/files/reports/statusofsouthafrican_marinefisheryresources2020.pdf

Department for Environment, Food and Rural Affairs (DEFRA) 2021. *Evidence Statement: Defining Fishing Dependent Communities*. United Kingdom Government.

Duggan, G.L. 2018. *Return to the Realm of the Kob Kings: Social Capital, Learning, Resilience and Action Research in a Changing Fishery*. PhD thesis, University of Cape Town.

Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations (FAO) 2001. *Information on Fisheries Management in the Republic of South Africa*. Available: <http://www.fao.org/fi/oldsite/fcp/en/zaf/body.htm>

Galal, S. 2021. Distribution of female-headed households in South Africa 2019, by province. *Statista*. Available: <https://www.statista.com/statistics/1114301/distribution-of-female-headed-households-in-south-africa-by-province/>

Gammage, L.C. 2015. *Considering one's options when the fish leave: A case study of traditional commercial hand-line fishery in southern Cape*. Master of Science thesis, University of Cape Town.

Gammage, L.C., Jarre, A. and Mather, C. 2017. A case study from the southern Cape linefishery 1: The difficulty of fishing in a changing world. *South African Journal of Science*, 113.

Gammage L.C. 2019. *Development of a scenario-based approach for adaptation to change in fishery systems: A case study in the small scale fisheries of the southern Cape*. Degree of Doctor of Philosophy thesis, University of Cape Town.

Gammage, L.C. and Jarre, A. 2021. Scenario-Based Approaches to Change Management in Fisheries Can Address Challenges with Scale and Support the Implementation of an Ecosystem Approach to Fisheries Management. *Frontiers in Marine Science*, 8.

Garden Route Municipality 2020. *Annual Report 2019-2020*. Available: <http://www.gardenroute.gov.za/documents/>

George, R.P. 2019. *Unlocking Small-Scale Fisheries Value Chains through Information & Communication Technology (ICT) – the case studies of Lamberts Bay & Kleinmond, South Africa*. Masters thesis, University of Cape Town.

Hine, P., Sealy, J., Halkett, D., and Hart, T. 2010. Antiquity of stone-walled tidal fish traps on the Cape Coast, South Africa. *The South African Archaeological Bulletin*, 65(191), 35-44.

Howard, J. a. E., Jarre, A., Clark, A. E. and Moloney, C. L. 2007. Application of the sequential t-test algorithm for analysing regime shifts to the southern Benguela ecosystem. *African Journal of Marine Science*, 29: 437-451.

Isaacs, M. 2006. Small-scale fisheries reform: expectations, hopes and dreams of “a better life for all.” *Marine Policy*, 30: 51-59.

Isaacs, M. and Hara, M. 2008. Research Report 39: Mainstreaming of HIV and Aids into South African small scale policy. *PLAAS*.

Isaacs, M. and Hara, M. 2015. Backing small-scale fishers: Opportunities and challenges in transforming the fish sector. *PLAAS*.

Isaacs, M. and Witbooi, E. 2019. Fisheries crime, human rights and small-scale fisheries in South Africa: A case of bigger fish to fry. *Marine Policy*, 105: 158-168.

International Council for the Exploration of the Sea (ICES) 2019. *Science Plan*. Available: https://issuu.com/icesdk/docs/ices_science_plan_2019_web

Jacob, S., Weeks, P., Blount, B.G. and Jepson, M. 2010. Exploring fishing dependence in gulf coast communities. *Marine Policy*, 34: 1307–1314.

Jacob, S., Weeks, P., Blount, B. and Jepson, M. 2013. Development and evaluation of social indicators of vulnerability and resiliency for fishing communities in the Gulf of Mexico. *Marine Policy*, 37: 86-95.

Jarre, A., Hutchings, L., Kirkman, S.P., Kreiner, A., Tchivalanga, P.C.M., Kainge, P., Uanivi, U., Van Der Plas, A.K., Blamey, L.K., Coetzee, J.C., Lamont, T., Samaai, T., Verheye, H.M., Yemane, D.G., Axelsen, B.E., Ostrowski, M., Stenevik, E.K. and Loeng, H. 2015. Synthesis: climate effects on biodiversity, abundance and distribution of marine organisms in the Benguela. *Fisheries Oceanography*, 24: 122-149.

Jarre, A., Shannon, L. J., Cooper, R., Duggan, G. L., Gammage, L. C., Lockerbie, E. M., McGregor, E. S., Ragaller, S. M., Visser, N., Ward, C., Watermeyer, K. E., Weller, F. G. and Ommer, R. E. 2018. Untangling a Gordian knot that must not be cut: Social ecological systems research for management of southern Benguela fisheries. *Journal of Marine Systems*.

Jepson, M. and Colburn, L.L. 2013. Development of Social Indicators of Fishing Community Vulnerability and Resilience in the U.S. Southeast and Northeast Regions. *NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-F/SPO*, 129: 1-72.

Kristensen, P. 2004. *The DPSIR Framework*. Paper presented at the 27-29 September 2004 workshop on a comprehensive / detailed assessment of the vulnerability of water resources to environmental change in Africa using river basin approach. UNEP Headquarters, Nairobi, Kenya.

Lewthwaite, G.A. 1999. S. Africa seeks fairer division of fish harvest; Nonwhites receive larger allocations, now that apartheid is ended. *The Baltimore Sun*. Available: <https://www.baltimoresun.com/news/bs-xpm-1999-11-18-9911180170-story.html>

Matzikama Municipality 2019. *Matzikama Municipality 2018-19 Approved Annual Report*. Available: <https://www.matzikamamunicipality.co.za/#/stratdocs>

Norton, M. 2014. *At the Interface: Marine compliance inspectors at work in the Western Cape*. PhD thesis, University of Cape Town.

Norton and Jarre, 2020. Being well-governed: Including inspectors in a systems approach to fisheries management. *Ambio*, 49(4): 1000–1018.

National Sea Rescue Institute (NSRI) 2020. *Sea Rescue South Africa: Integrated Annual Report 2020*. Available: <https://www.nsri.org.za/who-we-are/integrated-annual-reports>

Nthane, T.T. 2015. *Understanding the livelihoods of small-scale fishers in Lamberts Bay: Implications for the new Small-scale Fisheries Policy*. Masters thesis, University of Cape Town.

Oceana Group 2020. *Integrated Report 2020: Positively Impacting Lives*. Available: https://oceana.co.za/pdf/Oceana_Integrated_Report_2020.pdf

Overberg Municipality 2020. *Annual Report 2019-2020*. Available: <https://odm.org.za/resource-category/annual-reports?archive=05-2021>

Overstrand Municipality 2009a. *Public Participation Document: Fisherhaven*. Overstrand Heritage Landscape Group. Available: <https://www.overstrand.gov.za/en/documents/town-planning/strategic-documents-1/heritage-survey-overstrand-june-2009/1311-fisherhaven/file>

Overstrand Municipality 2009b. *Public Participation Document: Hawston*. Overstrand Heritage Landscape Group. Available: <https://www.overstrand.gov.za/en/documents/town-planning/strategic-documents-1/heritage-survey-overstrand-june-2009/1314-hawston-1/file>

Overstrand Municipality 2009c. *Public Participation Document: Buffelsjagsbaai*. Overstrand Heritage Landscape Group. Available: <https://www.overstrand.gov.za/en/documents/town-planning/strategic-documents-1/heritage-survey-overstrand-june-2009/1307-buffeljagsbaai/file>

Overstrand Municipality 2021. *Annual Report 2019-2020*. Available: <https://www.overstrand.gov.za>

Parker, K. 2013. *Livelihoods of Small-scale Fishers of Struisbaai: Implications for Marine Protected Area Planning*. Masters thesis, University of Cape Town.

Parliamentary Monitoring Group, 2019. *Small Harbours: progress report*. Available: <https://pmg.org.za/committee-meeting/28819/>

Rogerson, J. 2011. *Above the surface, beneath the waves: Contesting ecologies and generating knowledge conversations in Lamberts Bay*. Masters thesis, University of Cape Town.

Saldanha Bay Municipality 2020. *Annual Report 2019/20*. Available: https://sbm.gov.za/wp-content/uploads/Pages/Financial_Documents/Annual_Reports/Final_SAL-AR-2019-20-Final-to-Council-19-May-2021.pdf

Saldanha Bay Municipality 2021. *4th Generation Integrated Development Plan 2017 – 2022*. Available: https://sbm.gov.za/wp-content/uploads/Pages/IDP/SBM-4th-Review-of-4th_Generation_IDP-2021-2022-Final-.pdf

South African Heritage Resources Agency (SAHRA) 2009. Baboon Point (Cape Deseada), Erven 64, 65, 66, 67, Portion 4 Of Verlorenvlei 8 And Erf 10 On Portion 8 Of Verlorenvlei 8, Eland's Bay, Piketberg District, Cederberg Municipality. Available: <https://sahris.sahra.org.za/node/58506>

Schultz, O. 2010. *Belonging to the West Coast: An ethnography of St Helena Bay in the context of marine resource scarcity*. Masters thesis, University of Cape Town.

Shannon, L.J., Cury, P.M., Nel, D., Van Der Lingen, C.D., Leslie, R.W., Brouwer, S.L., Cockcroft, A.C. and Hutchings, L. 2006. How can science contribute to an ecosystem approach to pelagic, demersal and rock lobster fisheries in South Africa? *African Journal of Marine Science*, 28(1): 115-157.

Smith, A.K. 2014. *A Blurred Paradise: insider and outsider perspectives on Paternoster*. Masters thesis, University of Cape Town.

South African Government 2021. *Western Cape Agriculture assist farmers in drought stricken areas*. Available: <https://www.gov.za/speeches/drought-stricken-area-11-may-2021-0000>

Southworth, B., Wagener, W. and Bruiners, L. 2014. Velddrif/Laaiplek Precinct Plan: Final Report. *Berggrivier Municipality*. Available: <http://www.bergmun.org.za/sites/default/files/documents/Velddrif%20Laaiplek%20Pricinct%20Plan.pdf>

Sowman, M. 2003. Co-management of the Olifants River Harder Fishery. Chapter 12 in *Coastal and Fisheries Co-management in Southern Africa*. Eds. Hauck, M. and Sowman, M. 2003. University of Cape Town Press, 335 pp.

Sowman, M. 2006. Subsistence and small-scale fisheries in South Africa: a ten-year review. *Marine Policy*, 30: 60-73.

Sowman, M. 2011. New perspectives in small-scale fisheries management: challenges and prospects for implementation in South Africa. *African Journal of Marine Science*, 33(2): 297–311.

Sowman, M., Raemaekers, R. and Sunde, J. 2014. *Shifting gear: A new governance framework for small-scale fisheries in South Africa*. Chapter 10 in *Governance for Justice and Environmental Sustainability: Lessons across natural resource sectors in sub-Saharan Africa*. Eds. Sowman, M. and Wynberg, R. 2014. Routledge, 384 pp.

Sowman, M. 2017. *Olifants Estuary, South Africa: Moving Forward with Community Fishing Rights and Conservation Initiatives in the Face of New Threats from Mining*. Community Conservation. Available: https://www.communityconservation.net/wp-content/uploads/2016/01/South-Africa_April-2017.pdf

- Sowman, M. and Sunde, J. 2021. A just transition? Navigating the process of policy implementation in small-scale fisheries in South Africa. *Marine Policy*, 132.
- Statistics South Africa (StatsSA) 2011. Census 2011 Datasets. Available: <http://nesstar.statssa.gov.za:8282/webview/>
- Stellenbosch University, 2013. *Doringbaai: An assessment of the livelihoods and vulnerabilities of a small West Coast fishing community*. A consolidation of reports submitted by Honours students in Disaster Risk Studies, Department of Geography & Environmental Studies, Stellenbosch University.
- Strauss, M. 2019. A historical exposition of spatial injustice and segregated urban settlement in South Africa. *Fundamina*, 25(2).
- Sunde, J. 2014. *Marine Protected Areas and Small-scale Fisheries in South Africa: Promoting Governance, Participation, Equity and Benefit Sharing*. International Collective in Support of Fishworkers.
- Swartland Municipality, 2020. Swartland Municipality: Integrated Development Plan for 2017-2022. Available: https://www.cogta.gov.za/cgta_2016/wp-content/uploads/2020/12/Swartland-IDP_Amended_Doc_28_May_2020.pdf
- Turok, I. 2018. *Worlds Apart: Spatial Inequalities in South Africa*. In Smith, M.N. (Ed.). *Confronting Inequality: The South African Crisis*. Jacana Media.
- Van Zyl, M. 2008. *Heritage and change: the implementation of fishing policy in Kassiesbaai, South Africa, 2007*. Masters thesis, University of Cape Town.
- Visser, N. 2015. The Origins of the Present: Economic Conflicts in the Fisheries of the South African South Coast, circa 1910 to 1950. *Maritime Studies*.
- Vrancken, P. and Hugo, C. (Eds.). (2020). *African perspectives on selected marine, maritime and international trade law topics*. African Sun Media.
- Welman, L. and Ferreira, S. 2016. The co-evolution of Saldanha Bay (town and hinterland) and its Port *Local Economy*, 31(1–2): 219–233.
- Welman, L. and Ferreira, S. 2017. Sea Harvest: Back(fish)bone in Saldanha Bay's local and regional economy? *Local Economy*, 32(6): 487–504.
- Western Cape Government, 2015. *Western Cape fishing harbours are critical contributors to our economy*. Available: <https://www.westerncape.gov.za/general-publication/western-cape-fishing-harbours-are-critical-contributors-our-economy>
- Western Cape Government, 2021. *Western Cape Government: Overview*. Available: www.westerncape.gov.za
- Williams, S. 2013. *Beyond rights: Developing a conceptual framework for understanding access to coastal resources at Ebenhaeser and Covie, Western Cape, South Africa*. PhD thesis, University of Cape Town.
- Yeld, J. 2020. *Almost a century later, land claimants get back thousands of hectares of farm land and vineyards*. GroundUp. Available: <https://www.groundup.org.za/article/almost-century-later-land-claimants-get-thousands-hectares-farm-land-back-and-big-vineyards/>

Annex 1: Additional Community Profiles

The following community profiles are recommended to be included as part of these fishing community profiles due to the presence of active rights holders in the following towns in the Western Cape (excluding the Cape Town metropolitan area):

District Municipality	Local Municipality	Community (based on Main Place)	Number of fishery Rights holders (from fisher rights registration lists)
West Coast	Matzikama	Vredendal	1 fish processing establishment, 1 seaweed
	Swartland	Darling	10 small-scale fishers, 1 traditional linefish
Cape Winelands	Langeberg	Robertson	1 fish processing establishment, 1 traditional linefish
Overberg	Overstrand	Stanford	42 small-scale fishers, 3 abalone, 3 West Coast rock lobster (nearshore)

Vredendal

Location

The main place of Vredendal is located 45 km inland from the West Coast in the Western Cape (31°39'52"S, 18°30'22"E), under the jurisdiction of the Matzikama Local Municipality and West Coast District Municipality. The area was originally inhabited by the Khoisan in the pre-colonial era and was settled by European farmers from the 1700s. The town was established in 1933 on the banks of the Olifants River and has developed into an agricultural, economic and administrative centre for the surrounding agricultural communities.²⁷⁹ Today, Vredendal is a large and centrally located town in the area rendering it the logical economic and administrative centre (Matzikama Municipality, 2019).

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Vredendal had 4793 households and a population size of 18170 (787.17 per km²), where 51 % were female and 49 % male. The town had a median age of 26 years. Most of the population identified as coloured (68 %), followed by 16 % white, 12 % Black African and 4 % other population. Most residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (87 %), followed by 7 % isiXhosa.

Inventory of features

The infrastructure services of Vredendal are in good condition with basic services available, where the town is the administrative and commercial centre for the northern part of the Western Cape Province. Vredendal contains the regional headquarters for the Matzikama Local Municipality and also is the seat of a magistrate's court.

Involvement in fisheries

According to the fisher rights registration lists, there is one active holder for seaweed. It is likely that the rights holder travels to the coast (the nearest location being Doringbaai at approximately 50 km away) to engage in marine-related activities. There is one rights holder registered for a fish processing establishment operating in the industrial area of Vredendal.

Darling

Location

The main place of Darling is located 20 km inland from the West Coast in the Western Cape (33°23'S, 18°23'E), under the jurisdiction of the Swartland Local Municipality and West Coast District

²⁷⁹ See <https://southafrica.co.za>

Municipality. Darling was named after Charles Henry Darling, a Lieutenant Governor in the Cape during the colonial era and the town was founded on the farm Langfontein in 1853.²⁸⁰

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Darling had 496 households and a population size of 1073 (146.51 per km²), where 53 % were female and 47 % male. The town had a median age of 40 years. Most of the population identified as white (78 %), followed by 14 coloured and 5 % Black African. Most residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (61 %), followed by 34 % English and 4 % other languages.

Inventory of features

The infrastructure services of Darling are in good to fair condition with basic services available, mainly providing agricultural processing facilities, as well as labour and primary education services to the surrounding agricultural community. Larger administrative, municipal, retail, business and education services are based in the neighbouring centre of Malmesbury (35 km away).

Involvement in fisheries

According to the fisher rights registration lists, there are 10 small-scale fishers and one traditional linefish active rights holders. Traditionally, the fishing community in Darling makes use of the public launch site in Yzerfontein (25 km away), from where they operate most of their fishing activities. This fishing community contains the Darling Small Scale Fishers Primary Cooperative.²⁸¹

Robertson

Location

The main place of Robertson is located 130 km inland from the coast in the Western Cape (33°48'S, 19°53'E), under the jurisdiction of the Langeberg Local Municipality and Cape Winelands District Municipality. The town was founded in 1853 and agricultural has remained the primary contributor to the local economy as the area has developed, where Robertson now serves as a popular tourist destination and gateway for the Robertson Wine Valley.²⁸²

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Robertson had 5676 households and a population size of 21929 (964.77 per km²), where 52 % were female and 48 % male. The town had a median age of 20 years. Most of the population identified as coloured (75 %), followed by 19 % white and 5 % Black African. Most residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (93 %), followed by 4 % English.

Inventory of features

The infrastructure services of Robertson are in good to fair condition with basic services available, providing administrative, municipal, retail, business, industrial and education services to the surrounding agricultural community.

Involvement in fisheries

According to the fisher rights registration lists, there is one active holder for traditional linefish. It is likely that the rights holder travels to the coast (the nearest location being Struisbaai at approximately 137 km away) to engage in fishing activities. There is one rights holder registered for a fish processing establishment in Robertson, but it is likely that this establishment is based elsewhere. Marine-related businesses registered in the town include the Robertson Family Fishing company.²⁸³

²⁸⁰ See <http://www.darlingtourism.co.za>

²⁸¹ See <https://b2bhint.com/en/company/za/darling-small-scale-fishers-primary-co-operative-limited--C2020004497>

²⁸² See <https://www.route-62-info.co.za>

²⁸³ See <https://b2bhint.com/en/company/za/robertson-family-fishing--K2019157653>

Stanford

Location

The main place of Stanford is located 15 km inland from the southwest coast in the Western Cape (34°26'30"S, 19°27'20"E), under the jurisdiction of the Overstrand Local Municipality and Overberg District Municipality. The town was established in 1857 and named after its founder, Sir Robert Stanford who owned the original farm. Today, Stanford is a proclaimed heritage site and is the third most preserved town in the Western Cape.²⁸⁴

Demographic attributes

According to the Census 2011 data, Stanford had 1493 households and a population size of 4797 (1223.10 per km²), with an even split between males and females. The town had a median age of 24 years. Most of the population identified as coloured (60 %), followed by 29 % Black African and 10 % white. Most residents spoke Afrikaans as their home language (66 %), followed by 25 % isiXhosa and 7 % English.

Inventory of features

The infrastructure services of Stanford are in good to fair condition with basic services available, including shopping and retail outlets, municipal services, law and traffic enforcement services, a medical clinic and a light industrial area. Larger administrative, municipal, retail, business and education services are based in the neighbouring centre of Hermanus (25 km away).

Involvement in fisheries

According to the fisher rights registration lists, there are 42 small-scale fishers, three abalone and three West Coast rock lobster (nearshore) active rights holders. It is likely that the rights holders travel to the coast (the nearest location being Gansbaai at approximately 18 km away) to engage in fishing activities.

²⁸⁴ See <https://xplorio.com/stanford/en/about/history/>